



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification⁶ : G06F</p>	<p>A2</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/27155</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/02303</p>		<p>(43) International Publication Date: 6 September 1996 (06.09.96)</p>
<p>(22) International Filing Date: 13 February 1996 (13.02.96)</p>	<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p>	
<p>(30) Priority Data: 08/388,107 13 February 1995 (13.02.95) US</p>	<p>Published <i>Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.</i></p>	
<p>(71) Applicant: ELECTRONIC PUBLISHING RESOURCES, INC. [US/US]; 5203 Battery Lane, Bethesda, MD 20814 (US).</p>		
<p>(72) Inventors: GINTER, Karl, L.; 10404 43rd Avenue, Beltsville, MD 20705 (US). SHEAR, Victor, H.; 5203 Battery Lane, Bethesda, MD 20814 (US). SPAHN, Francis, J.; 2410 Edwards Avenue, El Cerrito, CA 94530 (US). VAN WIE, David, M.; 1250 Lakeside Drive, Sunnyvale, CA 94086 (US).</p>		
<p>(74) Agent: FARIS, Robert, W.; Nixon & Vanderhye P.C., 1100 North Glebe Road, Arlington, VA 22201-4714 (US).</p>		
<p>(54) Title: SYSTEMS AND METHODS FOR SECURE TRANSACTION MANAGEMENT AND ELECTRONIC RIGHTS PROTECTION</p>		
<p>(57) Abstract</p>		
<p>The present invention provides systems and methods for electronic commerce including secure transaction management and electronic rights protection. Electronic appliances such as computers employed in accordance with the present invention help to ensure that information is accessed and used only in authorized ways, and maintain the integrity, availability, and/or confidentiality of the information. Secure subsystems used with such electronic appliances provide a distributed virtual distribution environment (VDE) that may enforce a secure chain of handling and control, for example, to control and/or meter or otherwise monitor use of electronically stored or disseminated information. Such a virtual distribution environment may be used to protect rights of various participants in electronic commerce and other electronic or electronic-facilitated transactions. Secure distributed and other operating system environments and architectures, employing, for example, secure semiconductor processing arrangements that may establish secure, protected environments at each node. These techniques may be used to support an end-to-end electronic information distribution capability that may be used, for example, utilizing the "electronic highway".</p>		
<p>BEST AVAILABLE COPY</p>		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

SYSTEMS AND METHODS FOR SECURE TRANSACTION MANAGEMENT AND ELECTRONIC RIGHTS PROTECTION

Field(s) of the Invention(s)

This invention generally relates to computer and/or
electronic security.

5

More particularly, this invention relates to systems and
techniques for secure transaction management. This invention
also relates to computer-based and other electronic appliance-
based technologies that help to ensure that information is
10 accessed and/or otherwise used only in authorized ways, and
maintains the integrity, availability, and/or confidentiality of
such information and processes related to such use.

15

The invention also relates to systems and methods for
protecting rights of various participants in electronic commerce
and other electronic or electronically-facilitated transactions.

20

The invention also relates to secure chains of handling and
control for both information content and information employed to
regulate the use of such content and consequences of such use. It
also relates to systems and techniques that manage, including
meter and/or limit and/or otherwise monitor use of electronically
stored and/or disseminated information. The invention

particularly relates to transactions, conduct and arrangements that make use of, including consequences of use of, such systems and/or techniques.

5 The invention also relates to distributed and other operating systems, environments and architectures. It also generally relates to secure architectures, including, for example, tamper-resistant hardware-based processors, that can be used to establish security at each node of a distributed system.

10

Background and Summary of the Invention(s)

Telecommunications, financial transactions, government processes, business operations, entertainment, and personal business productivity all now depend on electronic appliances.

15 Millions of these electronic appliances have been electronically connected together. These interconnected electronic appliances comprise what is increasingly called the "information highway." Many businesses, academicians, and government leaders are concerned about how to protect the rights of citizens and

20 organizations who use this information (also "electronic" or "digital") highway.

Electronic Content

Today, virtually anything that can be represented by

25 words, numbers, graphics, or system of commands and

instructions can be formatted into electronic digital information.

Television, cable, satellite transmissions, and on-line services transmitted over telephone lines, compete to distribute digital information and entertainment to homes and businesses. The

5 owners and marketers of this content include software developers, motion picture and recording companies, publishers of books, magazines, and newspapers, and information database providers. The popularization of on-line services has also enabled the individual personal computer user to participate as a content
10 provider. It is estimated that the worldwide market for electronic information in 1992 was approximately \$40 billion and is expected to grow to \$200 billion by 1997, according to Microsoft Corporation. The present invention can materially enhance the revenue of content providers, lower the distribution costs and the
15 costs for content, better support advertising and usage information gathering, and better satisfy the needs of electronic information users. These improvements can lead to a significant increase in the amount and variety of electronic information and the methods by which such information is distributed.

20

The inability of conventional products to be shaped to the needs of electronic information providers and users is sharply in contrast to the present invention. Despite the attention devoted by a cross-section of America's largest telecommunications,
25 computer, entertainment and information provider companies to

some of the problems addressed by the present invention, only the present invention provides commercially secure, effective solutions for configurable, general purpose electronic commerce transaction/distribution control systems.

5

Controlling Electronic Content

The present invention provides a new kind of "virtual distribution environment" (called "VDE" in this document) that secures, administers, and audits electronic information use. VDE also features fundamentally important capabilities for managing content that travels "across" the "information highway." These capabilities comprise a rights protection solution that serves all electronic community members. These members include content creators and distributors, financial service providers, end-users, and others. VDE is the first general purpose, configurable, transaction control/rights protection solution for users of computers, other electronic appliances, networks, and the information highway.

20

A fundamental problem for electronic content providers is extending their ability to control the use of proprietary information. Content providers often need to limit use to authorized activities and amounts. Participants in a business model involving, for example, provision of movies and advertising on optical discs may include actors, directors, script and other

25

writers, musicians, studios, publishers, distributors, retailers, advertisers, credit card services, and content end-users. These participants need the ability to embody their range of agreements and requirements, including use limitations, into an "extended" agreement comprising an overall electronic business model. This extended agreement is represented by electronic content control information that can automatically enforce agreed upon rights and obligations. Under VDE, such an extended agreement may comprise an electronic contract involving all business model participants. Such an agreement may alternatively, or in addition, be made up of electronic agreements between subsets of the business model participants. Through the use of VDE, electronic commerce can function in the same way as traditional commerce—that is commercial relationships regarding products and services can be shaped through the negotiation of one or more agreements between a variety of parties.

Commercial content providers are concerned with ensuring proper compensation for the use of their electronic information. Electronic digital information, for example a CD recording, can today be copied relatively easily and inexpensively. Similarly, unauthorized copying and use of software programs deprives rightful owners of billions of dollars in annual revenue according to the International Intellectual Property Alliance. Content providers and distributors have devised a number of limited

function rights protection mechanisms to protect their rights.

Authorization passwords and protocols, license servers,

“lock/unlock” distribution methods, and non-electronic

contractual limitations imposed on users of shrink-wrapped

5 software are a few of the more prevalent content protection schemes. In a commercial context, these efforts are inefficient and limited solutions.

Providers of “electronic currency” have also created

10 protections for their type of content. These systems are not sufficiently adaptable, efficient, nor flexible enough to support the generalized use of electronic currency. Furthermore, they do not provide sophisticated auditing and control configuration capabilities. This means that current electronic currency tools

15 lack the sophistication needed for many real-world financial business models. VDE provides means for anonymous currency and for “conditionally” anonymous currency, wherein currency related activities remain anonymous except under special circumstances.

20

VDE Control Capabilities

VDE allows the owners and distributors of electronic digital information to reliably bill for, and securely control, audit,

25 and budget the use of, electronic information. It can reliably

detect and monitor the use of commercial information products.

VDE uses a wide variety of different electronic information delivery means: including, for example, digital networks, digital broadcast, and physical storage media such as optical and magnetic disks. VDE can be used by major network providers, hardware manufacturers, owners of electronic information, providers of such information, and clearinghouses that gather usage information regarding, and bill for the use of, electronic information.

VDE provides comprehensive and configurable transaction management, metering and monitoring technology. It can change how electronic information products are protected, marketed, packaged, and distributed. When used, VDE should result in higher revenues for information providers and greater user satisfaction and value. Use of VDE will normally result in lower usage costs, decreased transaction costs, more efficient access to electronic information, re-usability of rights protection and other transaction management implementations, greatly improved flexibility in the use of secured information, and greater standardization of tools and processes for electronic transaction management. VDE can be used to create an adaptable environment that fulfills the needs of electronic information owners, distributors, and users; financial clearinghouses; and usage information analyzers and resellers.

Rights and Control Information

In general, the present invention can be used to protect the rights of parties who have:

- 5 (a) proprietary or confidentiality interests in electronic information. It can, for example, help ensure that information is used only in authorized ways;
- 10 (b) financial interests resulting from the use of electronically distributed information. It can help ensure that content providers will be paid for use of distributed information; and
- 15 (c) interests in electronic credit and electronic currency storage, communication, and/or use including electronic cash, banking, and purchasing.

Protecting the rights of electronic community members involves a broad range of technologies. VDE combines these
20 technologies in a way that creates a "distributed" electronic rights protection "environment." This environment secures and protects transactions and other processes important for rights protection. VDE, for example, provides the ability to prevent, or impede, interference with and/or observation of, important rights
25 related transactions and processes. VDE, in its preferred

embodiment, uses special purpose tamper resistant Secure Processing Units (SPUs) to help provide a high level of security for VDE processes and information storage and communication.

5 The rights protection problems solved by the present invention are electronic versions of basic societal issues. These issues include protecting property rights, protecting privacy rights, properly compensating people and organizations for their work and risk, protecting money and credit, and generally
10 protecting the security of information. VDE employs a system that uses a common set of processes to manage rights issues in an efficient, trusted, and cost-effective way.

 VDE can be used to protect the rights of parties who create
15 electronic content such as, for example: records, games, movies, newspapers, electronic books and reference materials, personal electronic mail, and confidential records and communications. The invention can also be used to protect the rights of parties who provide electronic products, such as publishers and
20 distributors; the rights of parties who provide electronic credit and currency to pay for use of products, for example, credit clearinghouses and banks; the rights to privacy of parties who use electronic content (such as consumers, business people, governments); and the privacy rights of parties described by
25 electronic information, such as privacy rights related to

information contained in a medical record, tax record, or
personnel record.

In general, the present invention can protect the rights of
5 parties who have:

(a) commercial interests in electronically distributed
information -- the present invention can help ensure,
for example, that parties, will be paid for use of
distributed information in a manner consistent with
10 their agreement;

(b) proprietary and/or confidentiality interests in
electronic information -- the present invention can,
for example, help ensure that data is used only in
15 authorized ways;

(c) interests in electronic credit and electronic currency
storage, communication, and/or use -- this can
include electronic cash, banking, and purchasing;
20 and

(d) interests in electronic information derived, at least
in part, from use of other electronic information.

25 **VDE Functional Properties**

VDE is a cost-effective and efficient rights protection solution that provides a unified, consistent system for securing and managing transaction processing. VDE can:

- 5 (a) audit and analyze the use of content,
- (b) ensure that content is used only in authorized ways,
 and
- 10 (c) allow information regarding content usage to be used
 only in ways approved by content users.

In addition, VDE:

- 15 (a) is very configurable, modifiable, and re-usable;
- (b) supports a wide range of useful capabilities that may
 be combined in different ways to accommodate most
 potential applications;
- 20 (c) operates on a wide variety of electronic appliances
 ranging from hand-held inexpensive devices to large
 mainframe computers;

- (d) is able to ensure the various rights of a number of different parties, and a number of different rights protection schemes, simultaneously;
- 5 (e) is able to preserve the rights of parties through a series of transactions that may occur at different times and different locations;
- 10 (f) is able to flexibly accommodate different ways of securely delivering information and reporting usage; and
- 15 (g) provides for electronic analogues to "real" money and credit, including anonymous electronic cash, to pay for products and services and to support personal (including home) banking and other financial activities.

VDE economically and efficiently fulfills the rights protection needs of electronic community members. Users of VDE will not require additional rights protection systems for different information highway products and rights problems—nor will they be required to install and learn a new system for each new information highway application.

25

VDE provides a unified solution that allows all content creators, providers, and users to employ the same electronic rights protection solution. Under authorized circumstances, the participants can freely exchange content and associated content control sets. This means that a user of VDE may, if allowed, use the same electronic system to work with different kinds of content having different sets of content control information. The content and control information supplied by one group can be used by people who normally use content and control information supplied by a different group. VDE can allow content to be exchanged "universally" and users of an implementation of the present invention can interact electronically without fear of incompatibilities in content control, violation of rights, or the need to get, install, or learn a new content control system.

The VDE securely administers transactions that specify protection of rights. It can protect electronic rights including, for example:

- (a) the property rights of authors of electronic content,
- (b) the commercial rights of distributors of content,
- (c) the rights of any parties who facilitated the distribution of content,

- (d) the privacy rights of users of content,
- (e) the privacy rights of parties portrayed by stored and/or distributed content, and
- (f) any other rights regarding enforcement of electronic agreements.

5

VDE can enable a very broad variety of electronically enforced commercial and societal agreements. These agreements can include electronically implemented contracts, licenses, laws, regulations, and tax collection.

10

Contrast With Traditional Solutions

15

Traditional content control mechanisms often require users to purchase more electronic information than the user needs or desires. For example, infrequent users of shrink-wrapped software are required to purchase a program at the same price as frequent users, even though they may receive much less value from their less frequent use. Traditional systems do not scale cost according to the extent or character of usage and traditional systems can not attract potential customers who find that a fixed price is too high. Systems using traditional mechanisms are also not normally particularly secure. For example, shrink-wrapping

20

does not prevent the constant illegal pirating of software once removed from either its physical or electronic package.

Traditional electronic information rights protection
5 systems are often inflexible and inefficient and may cause a content provider to choose costly distribution channels that increase a product's price. In general these mechanisms restrict product pricing, configuration, and marketing flexibility. These compromises are the result of techniques for controlling
10 information which cannot accommodate both different content models and content models which reflect the many, varied requirements, such as content delivery strategies, of the model participants. This can limit a provider's ability to deliver sufficient overall value to justify a given product's cost in the eyes
15 of many potential users. VDE allows content providers and distributors to create applications and distribution networks that reflect content providers' and users' preferred business models. It offers users a uniquely cost effective and feature rich system that supports the ways providers want to distribute information
20 and the ways users want to use such information. VDE supports content control models that ensure rights and allow content delivery strategies to be shaped for maximum commercial results.

Chain of Handling and Control

VDE can protect a collection of rights belonging to various parties having in rights in, or to, electronic information. This information may be at one location or dispersed across (and/or moving between) multiple locations. The information may pass through a "chain" of distributors and a "chain" of users. Usage information may also be reported through one or more "chains" of parties. In general, VDE enables parties that (a) have rights in electronic information, and/or (b) act as direct or indirect agents for parties who have rights in electronic information, to ensure that the moving, accessing, modifying, or otherwise using of information can be securely controlled by rules regarding how, when, where, and by whom such activities can be performed.

VDE Applications and Software

VDE is a secure system for regulating electronic conduct and commerce. Regulation is ensured by control information put in place by one or more parties. These parties may include content providers, electronic hardware manufacturers, financial service providers, or electronic "infrastructure" companies such as cable or telecommunications companies. The control information implements "Rights Applications." Rights applications "run on" the "base software" of the preferred embodiment. This base software serves as a secure, flexible, general purpose foundation that can accommodate many

different rights applications, that is, many different business models and their respective participant requirements.

5 A rights application under VDE is made up of special purpose pieces, each of which can correspond to one or more basic electronic processes needed for a rights protection environment. These processes can be combined together like building blocks to create electronic agreements that can protect the rights, and may enforce fulfillment of the obligations, of electronic information
10 users and providers. One or more providers of electronic information can easily combine selected building blocks to create a rights application that is unique to a specific content distribution model. A group of these pieces can represent the capabilities needed to fulfill the agreement(s) between users and
15 providers. These pieces accommodate many requirements of electronic commerce including:

- ! the distribution of permissions to use electronic information;
20
- ! the persistence of the control information and sets of control information managing these permissions;
- ! configurable control set information that can be
25 selected by users for use with such information;

! data security and usage auditing of electronic
information; and

! a secure system for currency, compensation and
5 debit management.

For electronic commerce, a rights application, under the
preferred embodiment of the present invention, can provide
electronic enforcement of the business agreements between all
10 participants. Since different groups of components can be put
together for different applications, the present invention can
provide electronic control information for a wide variety of
different products and markets. This means the present
invention can provide a "unified," efficient, secure, and
15 cost-effective system for electronic commerce and data security.
This allows VDE to serve as a single standard for electronic
rights protection, data security, and electronic currency and
banking.

20 In a VDE, the separation between a rights application and
its foundation permits the efficient selection of sets of control
information that are appropriate for each of many different types
of applications and uses. These control sets can reflect both
rights of electronic community members, as well as obligations
25 (such as providing a history of one's use of a product or paying

taxes on one's electronic purchases). VDE flexibility allows its users to electronically implement and enforce common social and commercial ethics and practices. By providing a unified control system, the present invention supports a vast range of possible transaction related interests and concerns of individuals, communities, businesses, and governments. Due to its open design, VDE allows (normally under securely controlled circumstances) applications using technology independently created by users to be "added" to the system and used in conjunction with the foundation of the invention. In sum, VDE provides a system that can fairly reflect and enforce agreements among parties. It is a broad ranging and systematic solution that answers the pressing need for a secure, cost-effective, and fair electronic environment.

VDE Implementation

The preferred embodiment of the present invention includes various tools that enable system designers to directly insert VDE capabilities into their products. These tools include an Application Programmer's Interface ("API") and a Rights Permissioning and Management Language ("RPML"). The RPML provides comprehensive and detailed control over the use of the invention's features. VDE also includes certain user interface subsystems for satisfying the needs of content providers, distributors, and users.

Information distributed using VDE may take many forms.

It may, for example, be "distributed" for use on an individual's own computer, that is the present invention can be used to provide security for locally stored data. Alternatively, VDE may be used with information that is dispersed by authors and/or publishers to one or more recipients. This information may take many forms including: movies, audio recordings, games, electronic catalog shopping, multimedia, training materials, E-mail and personal documents, object oriented libraries, software programming resources, and reference/record keeping information resources (such as business, medical, legal, scientific, governmental, and consumer databases).

Electronic rights protection provided by the present invention will also provide an important foundation for trusted and efficient home and commercial banking, electronic credit processes, electronic purchasing, true or conditionally anonymous electronic cash, and EDI (Electronic Data Interchange). VDE provides important enhancements for improving data security in organizations by providing "smart" transaction management features that can be far more effective than key and password based "go/no go" technology.

VDE normally employs an integration of cryptographic and other security technologies (e.g. encryption, digital signatures,

etc.), with other technologies including: component, distributed, and event driven operating system technology, and related communications, object container, database, smart agent, smart card, and semiconductor design technologies.

5

I. Overview

A. VDE Solves Important Problems and Fills Critical Needs

The world is moving towards an integration of electronic information appliances. This interconnection of appliances provides a foundation for much greater electronic interaction and the evolution of electronic commerce. A variety of capabilities are required to implement an electronic commerce environment. VDE is the first system that provides many of these capabilities and therefore solves fundamental problems related to electronic dissemination of information.

15

Electronic Content

VDE allows electronic arrangements to be created involving two or more parties. These agreements can themselves comprise a collection of agreements between participants in a commercial value chain and/or a data security chain model for handling, auditing, reporting, and payment. It can provide efficient, reusable, modifiable, and consistent means for secure electronic content: distribution, usage control, usage payment,

25

usage auditing, and usage reporting. Content may, for example,
include:

5 ! financial information such as electronic currency and
 credit;

 ! commercially distributed electronic information such
 as reference databases, movies, games, and
 advertising; and

10 ! electronic properties produced by persons and
 organizations, such as documents, e-mail, and
 proprietary database information.

15 VDE enables an electronic commerce marketplace that supports
differing, competitive business partnerships, agreements, and
evolving overall business models.

 The features of VDE allow it to function as the first trusted
20 electronic information control environment that can conform to,
and support, the bulk of conventional electronic commerce and
data security requirements. In particular, VDE enables the
participants in a business value chain model to create an
electronic version of traditional business agreement terms and
25 conditions and further enables these participants to shape and

evolve their electronic commerce models as they believe appropriate to their business requirements.

5 VDE offers an architecture that avoids reflecting specific distribution biases, administrative and control perspectives, and content types. Instead, VDE provides a broad-spectrum, fundamentally configurable and portable, electronic transaction control, distributing, usage, auditing, reporting, and payment operating environment. VDE is not limited to being an
10 application or application specific toolset that covers only a limited subset of electronic interaction activities and participants. Rather, VDE supports systems by which such applications can be created, modified, and/or reused. As a result, the present invention answers pressing, unsolved needs by offering a system
15 that supports a standardized control environment which facilitates interoperability of electronic appliances, interoperability of content containers, and efficient creation of electronic commerce applications and models through the use of a programmable, secure electronic transactions management
20 foundation and reusable and extensible executable components. VDE can support a single electronic "world" within which most forms of electronic transaction activities can be managed.

To answer the developing needs of rights owners and
25 content providers and to provide a system that can accommodate

the requirements and agreements of all parties that may be involved in electronic business models (creators, distributors, administrators, users, credit providers, etc.), VDE supplies an efficient, largely transparent, low cost and sufficiently secure system (supporting both hardware/ software and software only models). VDE provides the widely varying secure control and administration capabilities required for:

1. Different types of electronic content,
2. Differing electronic content delivery schemes,
3. Differing electronic content usage schemes,
4. Different content usage platforms, and
5. Differing content marketing and model strategies.

VDE may be combined with, or integrated into, many separate computers and/or other electronic appliances. These appliances typically include a secure subsystem that can enable control of content use such as displaying, encrypting, decrypting, printing, copying, saving, extracting, embedding, distributing, auditing usage, etc. The secure subsystem in the preferred embodiment comprises one or more "protected processing

environments", one or more secure databases, and secure
"component assemblies" and other items and processes that need
to be kept secured. VDE can, for example, securely control
electronic currency, payments, and/or credit management
5 (including electronic credit and/or currency receipt,
disbursement, encumbering, and/or allocation) using such a
"secure subsystem."

VDE provides a secure, distributed electronic transaction
10 management system for controlling the distribution and/or other
usage of electronically provided and/or stored information. VDE
controls auditing and reporting of electronic content and/or
appliance usage. Users of VDE may include content creators who
apply content usage, usage reporting, and/or usage payment
15 related control information to electronic content and/or
appliances for users such as end-user organizations, individuals,
and content and/or appliance distributors. VDE also securely
supports the payment of money owed (including money owed for
content and/or appliance usage) by one or more parties to one or
20 more other parties, in the form of electronic credit and/or
currency.

Electronic appliances under control of VDE represent VDE
'nodes' that securely process and control; distributed electronic
25 information and/or appliance usage, control information

formulation, and related transactions. VDE can securely manage the integration of control information provided by two or more parties. As a result, VDE can construct an electronic agreement between VDE participants that represent a "negotiation" between, the control requirements of, two or more parties and enacts terms and conditions of a resulting agreement. VDE ensures the rights of each party to an electronic agreement regarding a wide range of electronic activities related to electronic information and/or appliance usage.

Through use of VDE's control system, traditional content providers and users can create electronic relationships that reflect traditional, non-electronic relationships. They can shape and modify commercial relationships to accommodate the evolving needs of, and agreements among, themselves. VDE does not require electronic content providers and users to modify their business practices and personal preferences to conform to a metering and control application program that supports limited, largely fixed functionality. Furthermore, VDE permits participants to develop business models not feasible with non-electronic commerce, for example, involving detailed reporting of content usage information, large numbers of distinct transactions at hitherto infeasibly low price points, "pass-along" control information that is enforced without involvement or advance knowledge of the participants, etc.

The present invention allows content providers and users
to formulate their transaction environment to accommodate:

- 5 (1) desired content models, content control models, and
 content usage information pathways,
- (2) a complete range of electronic media and distribution
 means,
- 10 (3) a broad range of pricing, payment, and auditing
 strategies,
- (4) very flexible privacy and/or reporting models,
- 15 (5) practical and effective security architectures, and
- (6) other administrative procedures that together with
 steps (1) through (5) can enable most "real world"
 electronic commerce and data security models,
20 including models unique to the electronic world.

VDE's transaction management capabilities can enforce:

- (1) privacy rights of users related to information regarding their usage of electronic information and/or appliances,
- 5 (2) societal policy such as laws that protect rights of content users or require the collection of taxes derived from electronic transaction revenue, and
- 10 (3) the proprietary and/or other rights of parties related to ownership of, distribution of, and/or other commercial rights related to, electronic information.

VDE can support "real" commerce in an electronic form, that is the progressive creation of commercial relationships that form, over time, a network of interrelated agreements representing a value chain business model. This is achieved in part by enabling content control information to develop through the interaction of (negotiation between) securely created and independently submitted sets of content and/or appliance control information. Different sets of content and/or appliance control information can be submitted by different parties in an electronic business value chain enabled by the present invention. These parties create control information sets through the use of their respective VDE installations. Independently, securely deliverable, component based control information allows efficient

15

20

25

interaction among control information sets supplied by different parties.

5 VDE permits multiple, separate electronic arrangements to be formed between subsets of parties in a VDE supported electronic value chain model. These multiple agreements together comprise a VDE value chain "extended" agreement. VDE allows such constituent electronic agreements, and therefore overall VDE extended agreements, to evolve and
10 reshape over time as additional VDE participants become involved in VDE content and/or appliance control information handling. VDE electronic agreements may also be extended as new control information is submitted by existing participants. With VDE, electronic commerce participants are free to structure
15 and restructure their electronic commerce business activities and relationships. As a result, the present invention allows a competitive electronic commerce marketplace to develop since the use of VDE enables different, widely varying business models using the same or shared content.

20

A significant facet of the present invention's ability to broadly support electronic commerce is its ability to securely manage independently delivered VDE component objects containing control information (normally in the form of VDE
25 objects containing one or more methods, data, or load module

VDE components). This independently delivered control information can be integrated with senior and other pre-existing content control information to securely form derived control information using the negotiation mechanisms of the present invention. All requirements specified by this derived control information must be satisfied before VDE controlled content can be accessed or otherwise used. This means that, for example, all load modules and any mediating data which are listed by the derived control information as required must be available and securely perform their required function. In combination with other aspects of the present invention, securely, independently delivered control components allow electronic commerce participants to freely stipulate their business requirements and trade offs. As a result, much as with traditional, non-electronic commerce, the present invention allows electronic commerce (through a progressive stipulation of various control requirements by VDE participants) to evolve into forms of business that are the most efficient, competitive and useful.

VDE provides capabilities that rationalize the support of electronic commerce and electronic transaction management. This rationalization stems from the reusability of control structures and user interfaces for a wide variety of transaction management related activities. As a result, content usage control, data security, information auditing, and electronic

financial activities, can be supported with tools that are reusable, convenient, consistent, and familiar. In addition, a rational approach—a transaction/distribution control standard—allows all participants in VDE the same foundation set of hardware
5 control and security, authoring, administration, and management tools to support widely varying types of information, business market model, and/or personal objectives.

Employing VDE as a general purpose electronic
10 transaction/distribution control system allows users to maintain a single transaction management control arrangement on each of their computers, networks, communication nodes, and/or other electronic appliances. Such a general purpose system can serve the needs of many electronic transaction management
15 applications without requiring distinct, different installations for different purposes. As a result, users of VDE can avoid the confusion and expense and other inefficiencies of different, limited purpose transaction control applications for each different content and/or business model. For example, VDE allows content
20 creators to use the same VDE foundation control arrangement for both content authoring and for licensing content from other content creators for inclusion into their products or for other use. Clearinghouses, distributors, content creators, and other VDE
25 users can all interact, both with the applications running on their VDE installations, and with each other, in an entirely consistent

manner, using and reusing (largely transparently) the same distributed tools, mechanisms, and consistent user interfaces, regardless of the type of VDE activity.

5 VDE prevents many forms of unauthorized use of electronic information, by controlling and auditing (and other administration of use) electronically stored and/or disseminated information. This includes, for example, commercially distributed content, electronic currency, electronic credit,
10 business transactions (such as EDI), confidential communications, and the like. VDE can further be used to enable commercially provided electronic content to be made available to users in user defined portions, rather than constraining the user to use portions of content that were "predetermined" by a content
15 creator and/or other provider for billing purposes.

VDE, for example, can employ:

- 20 (1) Secure metering means for budgeting and/or auditing electronic content and/or appliance usage;
- (2) Secure flexible means for enabling compensation and/or billing rates for content and/or appliance usage, including electronic credit and/or currency
25 mechanisms for payment means;

- 5
- (3) Secure distributed database means for storing control and usage related information (and employing validated compartmentalization and tagging schemes);
- (4) Secure electronic appliance control means;
- 10
- (5) A distributed, secure, "virtual black box" comprised of nodes located at every user (including VDE content container creators, other content providers, client users, and recipients of secure VDE content usage information) site. The nodes of said virtual black box normally include a secure subsystem having at least one secure hardware element (a semiconductor element or other hardware module for securely executing VDE control processes), said secure subsystems being distributed at nodes along a pathway of information storage, distribution, payment, usage, and/or auditing. In some
- 15
- 20
- embodiments, the functions of said hardware element, for certain or all nodes, may be performed by software, for example, in host processing environments of electronic appliances;
- 25
- (6) Encryption and decryption means;

- 5 (7) Secure communications means employing authentication, digital signaturing, and encrypted transmissions. The secure subsystems at said user nodes utilize a protocol that establishes and authenticates each node's and/or participant's identity, and establishes one or more secure host-to-host encryption keys for communications between the secure subsystems; and
- 10 (8) Secure control means that can allow each VDE installation to perform VDE content authoring (placing content into VDE containers with associated control information), content distribution, and content usage; as well as clearinghouse and other
- 15 administrative and analysis activities employing content usage information.

VDE may be used to migrate most non-electronic, traditional information delivery models (including entertainment, reference materials, catalog shopping, etc.) into an adequately

20 secure digital distribution and usage management and payment context. The distribution and financial pathways managed by a VDE arrangement may include:

25 ! content creator(s),

- ! distributor(s),
- ! redistributor(s),
- ! client administrator(s),
- ! client user(s),
- 5 ! financial and/or other clearinghouse(s),
- ! and/or government agencies.

These distribution and financial pathways may also include:

- 10 ! advertisers,
- ! market survey organizations, and/or
- ! other parties interested in the user usage of
information securely delivered and/or stored using
VDE.

15

Normally, participants in a VDE arrangement will employ the same secure VDE foundation. Alternate embodiments support VDE arrangements employing differing VDE foundations. Such alternate embodiments may employ procedures to ensure certain
20 interoperability requirements are met.

Secure VDE hardware (also known as SPUs for Secure Processing Units), or VDE installations that use software to substitute for, or complement, said hardware (provided by Host
25 Processing Environments (HPEs)), operate in conjunction with

secure communications, systems integration software, and distributed software control information and support structures, to achieve the electronic contract/rights protection environment of the present invention. Together, these VDE components
5 comprise a secure, virtual, distributed content and/or appliance control, auditing (and other administration), reporting, and payment environment. In some embodiments and where commercially acceptable, certain VDE participants, such as clearinghouses that normally maintain sufficiently physically
10 secure non-VDE processing environments, may be allowed to employ HPEs rather VDE hardware elements and interoperate, for example, with VDE end-users and content providers. VDE components together comprise a configurable, consistent, secure and "trusted" architecture for distributed, asynchronous control
15 of electronic content and/or appliance usage. VDE supports a "universe wide" environment for electronic content delivery, broad dissemination, usage reporting, and usage related payment activities.

20 VDE provides generalized configurability. This results, in part, from decomposition of generalized requirements for supporting electronic commerce and data security into a broad range of constituent "atomic" and higher level components (such as load modules, data elements, and methods) that may be
25 variously aggregated together to form control methods for

electronic commerce applications, commercial electronic agreements, and data security arrangements. VDE provides a secure operating environment employing VDE foundation elements along with secure independently deliverable VDE components that enable electronic commerce models and relationships to develop. VDE specifically supports the unfolding of distribution models in which content providers, over time, can expressly agree to, or allow, subsequent content providers and/or users to participate in shaping the control information for, and consequences of, use of electronic content and/or appliances. A very broad range of the functional attributes important for supporting simple to very complex electronic commerce and data security activities are supported by capabilities of the present invention. As a result, VDE supports most types of electronic information and/or appliance: usage control (including distribution), security, usage auditing, reporting, other administration, and payment arrangements.

VDE, in its preferred embodiment, employs object software technology and uses object technology to form "containers" for delivery of information that is (at least in part) encrypted or otherwise secured. These containers may contain electronic content products or other electronic information and some or all of their associated permissions (control) information. These container objects may be distributed along pathways involving

content providers and/or content users. They may be securely moved among nodes of a Virtual Distribution Environment (VDE) arrangement, which nodes operate VDE foundation software and execute control methods to enact electronic information usage control and/or administration models. The containers delivered through use of the preferred embodiment of the present invention may be employed both for distributing VDE control instructions (information) and/or to encapsulate and electronically distribute content that has been at least partially secured.

Content providers who employ the present invention may include, for example, software application and game publishers, database publishers, cable, television, and radio broadcasters, electronic shopping vendors, and distributors of information in electronic document, book, periodical, e-mail and/or other forms. Corporations, government agencies, and/or individual "end-users" who act as storers of, and/or distributors of, electronic information, may also be VDE content providers (in a restricted model, a user provides content only to himself and employs VDE to secure his own confidential information against unauthorized use by other parties). Electronic information may include proprietary and/or confidential information for personal or internal organization use, as well as information, such as software applications, documents, entertainment materials,

and/or reference information, which may be provided to other parties. Distribution may be by, for example, physical media delivery, broadcast and/or telecommunication means, and in the form of "static" files and/or streams of data. VDE may also be used, for example, for multi-site "real-time" interaction such as teleconferencing, interactive games, or on-line bulletin boards, where restrictions on, and/or auditing of, the use of all or portions of communicated information is enforced.

VDE provides important mechanisms for both enforcing commercial agreements and enabling the protection of privacy rights. VDE can securely deliver information from one party to another concerning the use of commercially distributed electronic content. Even if parties are separated by several "steps" in a chain (pathway) of handling for such content usage information, such information is protected by VDE through encryption and/or other secure processing. Because of that protection, the accuracy of such information is guaranteed by VDE, and the information can be trusted by all parties to whom it is delivered.

Furthermore, VDE guarantees that all parties can trust that such information cannot be received by anyone other than the intended, authorized, party(ies) because it is encrypted such that only an authorized party, or her agents, can decrypt it. Such information may also be derived through a secure VDE process at a previous pathway-of-handling location to produce secure VDE

reporting information that is then communicated securely to its intended recipient's VDE secure subsystem. Because VDE can deliver such information securely, parties to an electronic agreement need not trust the accuracy of commercial usage and/or other information delivered through means other than those under control of VDE.

VDE participants in a commercial value chain can be "commercially" confident (that is, sufficiently confident for commercial purposes) that the direct (constituent) and/or "extended" electronic agreements they entered into through the use of VDE can be enforced reliably. These agreements may have both "dynamic" transaction management related aspects, such as content usage control information enforced through budgeting, metering, and/or reporting of electronic information and/or appliance use, and/or they may include "static" electronic assertions, such as an end-user using the system to assert his or her agreement to pay for services, not to pass to unauthorized parties electronic information derived from usage of content or systems, and/or agreeing to observe copyright laws. Not only can electronically reported transaction related information be trusted under the present invention, but payment may be automated by the passing of payment tokens through a pathway of payment (which may or may not be the same as a pathway for reporting). Such payment can be contained within a VDE container created

automatically by a VDE installation in response to control information (located, in the preferred embodiment, in one or more permissions records) stipulating the "withdrawal" of credit or electronic currency (such as tokens) from an electronic account (for example, an account securely maintained by a user's VDE installation secure subsystem) based upon usage of VDE controlled electronic content and/or appliances (such as governments, financial credit providers, and users).

VDE allows the needs of electronic commerce participants to be served and it can bind such participants together in a universe wide, trusted commercial network that can be secure enough to support very large amounts of commerce. VDE's security and metering secure subsystem core will be present at all physical locations where VDE related content is (a) assigned usage related control information (rules and mediating data), and/or (b) used. This core can perform security and auditing functions (including metering) that operate within a "virtual black box," a collection of distributed, very secure VDE related hardware instances that are interconnected by secured information exchange (for example, telecommunication) processes and distributed database means. VDE further includes highly configurable transaction operating system technology, one or more associated libraries of load modules along with affiliated data, VDE related administration, data preparation, and analysis

applications, as well as system software designed to enable VDE integration into host environments and applications. VDE's usage control information, for example, provide for property content and/or appliance related: usage authorization, usage auditing (which may include audit reduction), usage billing, usage payment, privacy filtering, reporting, and security related communication and encryption techniques.

VDE extensively employs methods in the form of software objects to augment configurability, portability, and security of the VDE environment. It also employs a software object architecture for VDE content containers that carries protected content and may also carry both freely available information (e.g, summary, table of contents) and secured content control information which ensures the performance of control information. Content control information governs content usage according to criteria set by holders of rights to an object's contents and/or according to parties who otherwise have rights associated with distributing such content (such as governments, financial credit providers, and users).

In part, security is enhanced by object methods employed by the present invention because the encryption schemes used to protect an object can efficiently be further used to protect the associated content control information (software control

information and relevant data) from modification. Said object techniques also enhance portability between various computer and/or other appliance environments because electronic information in the form of content can be inserted along with (for
5 example, in the same object container as) content control information (for said content) to produce a "published" object. As a result, various portions of said control information may be specifically adapted for different environments, such as for diverse computer platforms and operating systems, and said
10 various portions may all be carried by a VDE container.

An objective of VDE is supporting a transaction/distribution control standard. Development of such a standard has many obstacles, given the security requirements
15 and related hardware and communications issues, widely differing environments, information types, types of information usage, business and/or data security goals, varieties of participants, and properties of delivered information. A significant feature of VDE accommodates the many, varying
20 distribution and other transaction variables by, in part, decomposing electronic commerce and data security functions into generalized capability modules executable within a secure hardware SPU and/or corresponding software subsystem and further allowing extensive flexibility in assembling, modifying,
25 and/or replacing, such modules (e.g. load modules and/or

methods) in applications run on a VDE installation foundation.
This configurability and reconfigurability allows electronic
commerce and data security participants to reflect their priorities
and requirements through a process of iteratively shaping an
5 evolving extended electronic agreement (electronic control
model). This shaping can occur as content control information
passes from one VDE participant to another and to the extent
allowed by "in place" content control information. This process
allows users of VDE to recast existing control information and/or
10 add new control information as necessary (including the
elimination of no longer required elements).

VDE supports trusted (sufficiently secure) electronic
information distribution and usage control models for both
15 commercial electronic content distribution and data security
applications. It can be configured to meet the diverse
requirements of a network of interrelated participants that may
include content creators, content distributors, client
administrators, end users, and/or clearinghouses and/or other
20 content usage information users. These parties may constitute a
network of participants involved in simple to complex electronic
content dissemination, usage control, usage reporting, and/or
usage payment. Disseminated content may include both
originally provided and VDE generated information (such as
25 content usage information) and content control information may

persist through both chains (one or more pathways) of content and content control information handling, as well as the direct usage of content. The configurability provided by the present invention is particularly critical for supporting electronic commerce, that is enabling businesses to create relationships and evolve strategies that offer competitive value. Electronic commerce tools that are not inherently configurable and interoperable will ultimately fail to produce products (and services) that meet both basic requirements and evolving needs of most commerce applications.

VDE's fundamental configurability will allow a broad range of competitive electronic commerce business models to flourish. It allows business models to be shaped to maximize revenues sources, end-user product value, and operating efficiencies. VDE can be employed to support multiple, differing models, take advantage of new revenue opportunities, and deliver product configurations most desired by users. Electronic commerce technologies that do not, as the present invention does:

- ! support a broad range of possible, complementary revenue activities,
- ! offer a flexible array of content usage features most desired by customers, and
- ! exploit opportunities for operating efficiencies,

will result in products that are often intrinsically more costly and less appealing and therefore less competitive in the marketplace.

5 Some of the key factors contributing to the configurability intrinsic to the present invention include:

- 10 (a) integration into the fundamental control environment of a broad range of electronic appliances through portable API and programming language tools that efficiently support merging of control and auditing capabilities in nearly any electronic appliance environment while maintaining overall system security;
- 15 (b) modular data structures;
- (c) generic content model;
- 20 (d) general modularity and independence of foundation architectural components;
- (e) modular security structures;
- 25 (f) variable length and multiple branching chains of control; and

(g) independent, modular control structures in the form of executable load modules that can be maintained in one or more libraries, and assembled into control methods and models, and where such model control schemes can "evolve" as control information passes through the VDE installations of participants of a pathway of VDE content control information handling.

10 Because of the breadth of issues resolved by the present invention, it can provide the emerging "electronic highway" with a single transaction/distribution control system that can, for a very broad range of commercial and data security models, ensure against unauthorized use of confidential and/or proprietary
15 information and commercial electronic transactions. VDE's electronic transaction management mechanisms can enforce the electronic rights and agreements of all parties participating in widely varying business and data security models, and this can be efficiently achieved through a single VDE implementation
20 within each VDE participant's electronic appliance. VDE supports widely varying business and/or data security models that can involve a broad range of participants at various "levels" of VDE content and/or content control information pathways of handling. Different content control and/or auditing models and
25 agreements may be available on the same VDE installation.

These models and agreements may control content in relationship to, for example, VDE installations and/or users in general; certain specific users, installations, classes and/or other groupings of installations and/or users; as well as to electronic content generally on a given installation, to specific properties, property portions, classes and/or other groupings of content.

Distribution using VDE may package both the electronic content and control information into the same VDE container, and/or may involve the delivery to an end-user site of different pieces of the same VDE managed property from plural separate remote locations and/or in plural separate VDE content containers and/or employing plural different delivery means. Content control information may be partially or fully delivered separately from its associated content to a user VDE installation in one or more VDE administrative objects. Portions of said control information may be delivered from one or more sources. Control information may also be available for use by access from a user's VDE installation secure sub-system to one or more remote VDE secure sub-systems and/or VDE compatible, certified secure remote locations. VDE control processes such as metering, budgeting, decrypting and/or fingerprinting, may as relates to a certain user content usage activity, be performed in a user's local VDE installation secure subsystem, or said processes may be divided amongst plural secure subsystems which may be

located in the same user VDE installations and/or in a network server and in the user installation. For example, a local VDE installation may perform decryption and save any, or all of, usage metering information related to content and/or electronic appliance usage at such user installation could be performed at the server employing secure (e.g., encrypted) communications between said secure subsystems. Said server location may also be used for near real time, frequent, or more periodic secure receipt of content usage information from said user installation, with, for example, metered information being maintained only temporarily at a local user installation.

Delivery means for VDE managed content may include electronic data storage means such as optical disks for delivering one portion of said information and broadcasting and/or telecommunicating means for other portions of said information. Electronic data storage means may include magnetic media, optical media, combined magneto-optical systems, flash RAM memory, bubble memory, and/or other memory storage means such as huge capacity optical storage systems employing holographic, frequency, and/or polarity data storage techniques. Data storage means may also employ layered disc techniques, such as the use of generally transparent and/or translucent materials that pass light through layers of data carrying discs which themselves are physically packaged together as one

thicker disc. Data carrying locations on such discs may be, at least in part, opaque.

VDE supports a general purpose foundation for secure transaction management, including usage control, auditing, reporting, and/or payment. This general purpose foundation is called "VDE Functions" ("VDEFs"). VDE also supports a collection of "atomic" application elements (e.g., load modules) that can be selectively aggregated together to form various VDEF capabilities called control methods and which serve as VDEF applications and operating system functions. When a host operating environment of an electronic appliance includes VDEF capabilities, it is called a "Rights Operating System" (ROS). VDEF load modules, associated data, and methods form a body of information that for the purposes of the present invention are called "control information." VDEF control information may be specifically associated with one or more pieces of electronic content and/or it may be employed as a general component of the operating system capabilities of a VDE installation.

20

VDEF transaction control elements reflect and enact content specific and/or more generalized administrative (for example, general operating system) control information. VDEF capabilities which can generally take the form of applications (application models) that have more or less configurability which

25

can be shaped by VDE participants, through the use, for example, of VDE templates, to employ specific capabilities, along, for example, with capability parameter data to reflect the elements of one or more express electronic agreements between VDE participants in regards to the use of electronic content such as commercially distributed products. These control capabilities manage the use of, and/or auditing of use of, electronic content, as well as reporting information based upon content use, and any payment for said use. VDEF capabilities may "evolve" to reflect the requirements of one or more successive parties who receive or otherwise contribute to a given set of control information. Frequently, for a VDE application for a given content model (such as distribution of entertainment on CD-ROM, content delivery from an Internet repository, or electronic catalog shopping and advertising, or some combination of the above) participants would be able to securely select from amongst available, alternative control methods and apply related parameter data, wherein such selection of control method and/or submission of data would constitute their "contribution" of control information. Alternatively, or in addition, certain control methods that have been expressly certified as securely interoperable and compatible with said application may be independently submitted by a participant as part of such a contribution. In the most general example, a generally certified load module (certified for a given VDE arrangement and/or content class) may be used with many

or any VDE application that operates in nodes of said arrangement. These parties, to the extent they are allowed, can independently and securely add, delete, and/or otherwise modify the specification of load modules and methods, as well as add,
5 delete or otherwise modify related information.

Normally the party who creates a VDE content container defines the general nature of the VDEF capabilities that will and/or may apply to certain electronic information. A VDE
10 content container is an object that contains both content (for example, commercially distributed electronic information products such as computer software programs, movies, electronic publications or reference materials, etc.) and certain control information related to the use of the object's content. A creating
15 party may make a VDE container available to other parties. Control information delivered by, and/or otherwise available for use with, VDE content containers comprise (for commercial content distribution purposes) VDEF control capabilities (and any associated parameter data) for electronic content. These
20 capabilities may constitute one or more "proposed" electronic agreements (and/or agreement functions available for selection and/or use with parameter data) that manage the use and/or the consequences of use of such content and which can enact the terms and conditions of agreements involving multiple parties
25 and their various rights and obligations.

A VDE electronic agreement may be explicit, through a user interface acceptance by one or more parties, for example by a "junior" party who has received control information from a "senior" party, or it may be a process amongst equal parties who individually assert their agreement. Agreement may also result from an automated electronic process during which terms and conditions are "evaluated" by certain VDE participant control information that assesses whether certain other electronic terms and conditions attached to content and/or submitted by another party are acceptable (do not violate acceptable control information criteria). Such an evaluation process may be quite simple, for example a comparison to ensure compatibility between a portion of, or all senior, control terms and conditions in a table of terms and conditions and the submitted control information of a subsequent participant in a pathway of content control information handling, or it may be a more elaborate process that evaluates the potential outcome of, and/or implements a negotiation process between, two or more sets of control information submitted by two or more parties. VDE also accommodates a semi-automated process during which one or more VDE participants directly, through user interface means, resolve "disagreements" between control information sets by accepting and/or proposing certain control information that may be acceptable to control information representing one or more other parties interests and/or responds to certain user interface

queries for selection of certain alternative choices and/or for certain parameter information, the responses being adopted if acceptable to applicable senior control information.

5 When another party (other than the first applier of rules), perhaps through a negotiation process, accepts, and/or adds to and/or otherwise modifies, "in place" content control information, a VDE agreement between two or more parties related to the use of such electronic content may be created (so long as any
10 modifications are consistent with senior control information). Acceptance of terms and conditions related to certain electronic content may be direct and express, or it may be implicit as a result of use of content (depending, for example, on legal requirements, previous exposure to such terms and conditions,
15 and requirements of in place control information).

 VDEF capabilities may be employed, and a VDE agreement may be entered into, by a plurality of parties without the VDEF capabilities being directly associated with the
20 controlling of certain, specific electronic information. For example, certain one or more VDEF capabilities may be present at a VDE installation, and certain VDE agreements may have been entered into during the registration process for a content distribution application, to be used by such installation for
25 securely controlling VDE content usage, auditing, reporting

and/or payment. Similarly, a specific VDE participant may enter into a VDE user agreement with a VDE content or electronic appliance provider when the user and/or her appliance register with such provider as a VDE installation and/or user. In such events, VDEF in place control information available to the user VDE installation may require that certain VDEF methods are employed, for example in a certain sequence, in order to be able to use all and/or certain classes, of electronic content and/or VDE applications.

VDE ensures that certain prerequisites necessary for a given transaction to occur are met. This includes the secure execution of any required load modules and the availability of any required, associated data. For example, required load modules and data (e.g. in the form of a method) might specify that sufficient credit from an authorized source must be confirmed as available. It might further require certain one or more load modules execute as processes at an appropriate time to ensure that such credit will be used in order to pay for user use of the content. A certain content provider might, for example, require metering the number of copies made for distribution to employees of a given software program (a portion of the program might be maintained in encrypted form and require the presence of a VDE installation to run). This would require the execution of a metering method for copying of the property each time a copy

was made for another employee. This same provider might also charge fees based on the total number of different properties licensed from them by the user and a metering history of their licensing of properties might be required to maintain this
5 information.

VDE provides organization, community, and/or universe wide secure environments whose integrity is assured by processes securely controlled in VDE participant user
10 installations (nodes). VDE installations, in the preferred embodiment, may include both software and tamper resistant hardware semiconductor elements. Such a semiconductor arrangement comprises, at least in part, special purpose circuitry that has been designed to protect against tampering with, or
15 unauthorized observation of, the information and functions used in performing the VDE's control functions. The special purpose secure circuitry provided by the present invention includes at least one of: a dedicated semiconductor arrangement known as a Secure Processing Unit (SPU) and/or a standard microprocessor,
20 microcontroller, and/or other processing logic that accommodates the requirements of the present invention and functions as an SPU. VDE's secure hardware may be found incorporated into, for example, a fax/modem chip or chip pack, I/O controller, video display controller, and/or other available digital processing
25 arrangements. It is anticipated that portions of the present

invention's VDE secure hardware capabilities may ultimately be standard design elements of central processing units (CPUs) for computers and various other electronic devices.

5 Designing VDE capabilities into one or more standard microprocessor, microcontroller and/or other digital processing components may materially reduce VDE related hardware costs by employing the same hardware resources for both the transaction management uses contemplated by the present
10 invention and for other, host electronic appliance functions. This means that a VDE SPU can employ (share) circuitry elements of a "standard" CPU. For example, if a "standard" processor can operate in protected mode and can execute VDE related instructions as a protected activity, then such an embodiment
15 may provide sufficient hardware security for a variety of applications and the expense of a special purpose processor might be avoided. Under one preferred embodiment of the present invention, certain memory (e.g., RAM, ROM, NVRAM) is maintained during VDE related instruction processing in a
20 protected mode (for example, as supported by protected mode microprocessors). This memory is located in the same package as the processing logic (e.g. processor). Desirably, the packaging and memory of such a processor would be designed using security techniques that enhance its resistance to tampering.

25

The degree of overall security of the VDE system is primarily dependent on the degree of tamper resistance and concealment of VDE control process execution and related data storage activities. Employing special purpose semiconductor packaging techniques can significantly contribute to the degree of security. Concealment and tamper-resistance in semiconductor memory (e.g., RAM, ROM, NVRAM) can be achieved, in part, by employing such memory within an SPU package, by encrypting data before it is sent to external memory (such as an external RAM package) and decrypting encrypted data within the CPU/RAM package before it is executed. This process is used for important VDE related data when such data is stored on unprotected media, for example, standard host storage, such as random access memory, mass storage, etc. In that event, a VDE SPU would encrypt data that results from a secure VDE execution before such data was stored in external memory.

Summary of Some Important Features Provided by VDE in Accordance With the Present Invention

VDE employs a variety of capabilities that serve as a foundation for a general purpose, sufficiently secure distributed electronic commerce solution. VDE enables an electronic commerce marketplace that supports divergent, competitive business partnerships, agreements, and evolving overall business models. For example, VDE includes features that:

“sufficiently” impede unauthorized and/or
uncompensated use of electronic information and/or
appliances through the use of secure communication,
storage, and transaction management technologies.

5 VDE supports a model wide, distributed security
implementation which creates a single secure
“virtual” transaction processing and information
storage environment. VDE enables distributed VDE
installations to securely store and communicate
10 information and remotely control the execution
processes and the character of use of electronic
information at other VDE installations and in a wide
variety of ways;

15 ! support low-cost, efficient, and effective security
architectures for transaction control, auditing,
reporting, and related communications and
information storage. VDE may employ tagging
related security techniques, the time-ageing of
20 encryption keys, the compartmentalization of both
stored control information (including differentially
tagging such stored information to ensure against
substitution and tampering) and distributed content
(to, for many content applications, employ one or
25 more content encryption keys that are unique to the

specific VDE installation and/or user), private key techniques such as triple DES to encrypt content, public key techniques such as RSA to protect communications and to provide the benefits of digital signature and authentication to securely bind together the nodes of a VDE arrangement, secure processing of important transaction management executable code, and a combining of a small amount of highly secure, hardware protected storage space with a much larger "exposed" mass media storage space storing secured (normally encrypted and tagged) control and audit information. VDE employs special purpose hardware distributed throughout some or all locations of a VDE implementation: a) said hardware controlling important elements of: content preparation (such as causing such content to be placed in a VDE content container and associating content control information with said content), content and/or electronic appliance usage auditing, content usage analysis, as well as content usage control; and b) said hardware having been designed to securely handle processing load module control activities, wherein said control processing activities may involve a sequence of required control factors;

! support dynamic user selection of information
subsets of a VDE electronic information product
(VDE controlled content). This contrasts with the
constraints of having to use a few high level
5 individual, pre-defined content provider information
increments such as being required to select a whole
information product or product section in order to
acquire or otherwise use a portion of such product or
section. VDE supports metering and usage control
10 over a variety of increments (including "atomic"
increments, and combinations of different increment
types) that are selected ad hoc by a user and
represent a collection of pre-identified one or more
increments (such as one or more blocks of a
15 preidentified nature, e.g., bytes, images, logically
related blocks) that form a generally arbitrary, but
logical to a user, content "deliverable." VDE control
information (including budgeting, pricing and
metering) can be configured so that it can specifically
20 apply, as appropriate, to ad hoc selection of different,
unanticipated variable user selected aggregations of
information increments and pricing levels can be, at
least in part, based on quantities and/or nature of
mixed increment selections (for example, a certain
25 quantity of certain text could mean associated

images might be discounted by 15%; a greater quantity of text in the "mixed" increment selection might mean the images are discounted 20%). Such user selected aggregated information increments can reflect the actual requirements of a user for information and is more flexible than being limited to a single, or a few, high level, (e.g. product, document, database record) predetermined increments. Such high level increments may include quantities of information not desired by the user and as a result be more costly than the subset of information needed by the user if such a subset was available. In sum, the present invention allows information contained in electronic information products to be supplied according to user specification. Tailoring to user specification allows the present invention to provide the greatest value to users, which in turn will generate the greatest amount of electronic commerce activity. The user, for example, would be able to define an aggregation of content derived from various portions of an available content product, but which, as a deliverable for use by the user, is an entirely unique aggregated increment. The user may, for example, select certain numbers of bytes of information from

various portions of an information product, such as a
reference work, and copy them to disc in
unencrypted form and be billed based on total
number of bytes plus a surcharge on the number of
5 "articles" that provided the bytes. A content
provider might reasonably charge less for such a
user defined information increment since the user
does not require all of the content from all of the
articles that contained desired information. This
10 process of defining a user desired information
increment may involve artificial intelligence
database search tools that contribute to the location
of the most relevant portions of information from an
information product and cause the automatic display
15 to the user of information describing search criteria
hits for user selection or the automatic extraction
and delivery of such portions to the user. VDE
further supports a wide variety of predefined
increment types including:
20 ! bytes,
! images,
! content over time for audio or video, or any
other increment that can be identified by content
provider data mapping efforts, such as:
25 ! sentences,

! paragraphs,
! articles,
! database records, and
! byte offsets representing increments of
5 logically related information.

VDE supports as many simultaneous predefined increment types
as may be practical for a given type of content and business
model.

10 ! securely store at a user's site potentially highly
detailed information reflective of a user's usage of a
variety of different content segment types and
employing both inexpensive "exposed" host mass
storage for maintaining detailed information in the
15 form of encrypted data and maintaining summary
information for security testing in highly secure
special purpose VDE installation nonvolatile
memory (if available).

20 ! support trusted chain of handling capabilities for
pathways of distributed electronic information
and/or for content usage related information. Such
chains may extend, for example, from a content
creator, to a distributor, a redistributor, a client
25 user, and then may provide a pathway for securely

reporting the same and/or differing usage
information to one or more auditors, such as to one
or more independent clearinghouses and then back
to the content providers, including content creators.

5 The same and/or different pathways employed for
certain content handling, and related content control
information and reporting information handling,
may also be employed as one or more pathways for
electronic payment handling (payment is

10 characterized in the present invention as
administrative content) for electronic content and/or
appliance usage. These pathways are used for
conveyance of all or portions of content, and/or
content related control information. Content

15 creators and other providers can specify the
pathways that, partially or fully, must be used to
disseminate commercially distributed property
content, content control information, payment
administrative content, and/or associated usage

20 reporting information. Control information specified
by content providers may also specify which specific
parties must or may (including, for example, a group
of eligible parties from which a selection may be
made) handle conveyed information. It may also

25 specify what transmission means (for example

telecommunication carriers or media types) and transmission hubs must or may be used.

- 5 ! support flexible auditing mechanisms, such as
employing "bitmap meters," that achieve a high
degree of efficiency of operation and throughput and
allow, in a practical manner, the retention and ready
recall of information related to previous usage
activities and related patterns. This flexibility is
10 adaptable to a wide variety of billing and security
control strategies such as:
- P upgrade pricing (e.g. suite purchases),
 - P pricing discounts (including quantity
discounts),
 - 15 P billing related time duration variables such as
discounting new purchases based on the
timing of past purchases, and
 - P security budgets based on quantity of
different, logically related units of electronic
20 information used over an interval of time.

Use of bitmap meters (including "regular" and "wide"
bitmap meters) to record usage and/or purchase of
information, in conjunction with other elements of
25 the preferred embodiment of the present invention,

uniquely supports efficient maintenance of usage history for: (a) rental, (b) flat fee licensing or purchase, (c) licensing or purchase discounts based upon historical usage variables, and (d) reporting to users in a manner enabling users to determine whether a certain item was acquired, or acquired within a certain time period (without requiring the use of conventional database mechanisms, which are highly inefficient for these applications). Bitmap meter methods record activities associated with electronic appliances, properties, objects, or portions thereof, and/or administrative activities that are independent of specific properties, objects, etc., performed by a user and/or electronic appliance such that a content and/or appliance provider and/or controller of an administrative activity can determine whether a certain activity has occurred at some point, or during a certain period, in the past (for example, certain use of a commercial electronic content product and/or appliance). Such determinations can then be used as part of pricing and/or control strategies of a content and/or appliance provider, and/or controller of an administrative activity. For example, the content provider may choose to charge only once for access to

a portion of a property, regardless of the number of times that portion of the property is accessed by a user.

5 ! support "launchable" content, that is content that
can be provided by a content provider to an end-user,
who can then copy or pass along the content to other
end-user parties without requiring the direct
participation of a content provider to register and/or
10 otherwise initialize the content for use. This content
goes "out of (the traditional distribution) channel" in
the form of a "traveling object." Traveling objects are
containers that securely carry at least some
permissions information and/or methods that are
15 required for their use (such methods need not be
carried by traveling objects if the required methods
will be available at, or directly available to, a
destination VDE installation). Certain travelling
objects may be used at some or all VDE installations
20 of a given VDE arrangement since they can make
available the content control information necessary
for content use without requiring the involvement of
a commercial VDE value chain participant or data
security administrator (e.g. a control officer or
25 network administrator). As long as traveling object

control information requirements are available at the user VDE installation secure subsystem (such as the presence of a sufficient quantity of financial credit from an authorized credit provider), at least
5 some travelling object content may be used by a receiving party without the need to establish a connection with a remote VDE authority (until, for example, budgets are exhausted or a time content usage reporting interval has occurred). Traveling
10 objects can travel "out-of-channel," allowing, for example, a user to give a copy of a traveling object whose content is a software program, a movie or a game, to a neighbor, the neighbor being able to use the traveling object if appropriate credit (e.g. an
15 electronic clearinghouse account from a clearinghouse such as VISA or AT&T) is available. Similarly, electronic information that is generally available on an Internet, or a similar network, repository might be provided in the form of a
20 traveling object that can be downloaded and subsequently copied by the initial downloader and then passed along to other parties who may pass the object on to additional parties.

! provide very flexible and extensible user
identification according to individuals, installations,
by groups such as classes, and by function and
hierarchical identification employing a hierarchy of
5 levels of client identification (for example, client
organization ID, client department ID, client
network ID, client project ID, and client employee
ID, or any appropriate subset of the above).

10 ! provide a general purpose, secure, component based
content control and distribution system that
functions as a foundation transaction operating
system environment that employs executable code
pieces crafted for transaction control and auditing.
15 These code pieces can be reused to optimize
efficiency in creation and operation of trusted,
distributed transaction management arrangements.
VDE supports providing such executable code in the
form of "atomic" load modules and associated data.
20 Many such load modules are inherently configurable,
aggregatable, portable, and extensible and
singularly, or in combination (along with associated
data), run as control methods under the VDE
transaction operating environment. VDE can satisfy
25 the requirements of widely differing electronic

commerce and data security applications by, in part,
employing this general purpose transaction
management foundation to securely process VDE
transaction related control methods. Control
5 methods are created primarily through the use of
one or more of said executable, reusable load module
code pieces (normally in the form of executable object
components) and associated data. The component
nature of control methods allows the present
10 invention to efficiently operate as a highly
configurable content control system. Under the
present invention, content control models can be
iteratively and asynchronously shaped, and
otherwise updated to accommodate the needs of VDE
15 participants to the extent that such shaping and
otherwise updating conforms to constraints applied
by a VDE application, if any (e.g., whether new
component assemblies are accepted and, if so, what
certification requirements exist for such component
20 assemblies or whether any or certain participants
may shape any or certain control information by
selection amongst optional control information
(permissions record) control methods. This iterative
(or concurrent) multiple participant process occurs
25 as a result of the submission and use of secure,

control information components (executable code
such as load modules and/or methods, and/or
associated data). These components may be
contributed independently by secure communication
5 between each control information influencing VDE
participant's VDE installation and may require
certification for use with a given application, where
such certification was provided by a certification
service manager for the VDE arrangement who
10 ensures secure interoperability and/or reliability
(e.g., bug control resulting from interaction) between
appliances and submitted control methods. The
transaction management control functions of a VDE
electronic appliance transaction operating
15 environment interact with non-secure transaction
management operating system functions to properly
direct transaction processes and data related to
electronic information security, usage control,
auditing, and usage reporting. VDE provides the
20 capability to manages resources related to secure
VDE content and/or appliance control information
execution and data storage.

! facilitate creation of application and/or system
25 functionality under VDE and to facilitate integration

into electronic appliance environments of load modules and methods created under the present invention. To achieve this, VDE employs an Application Programmer's Interface (API) and/or a transaction operating system (such as a ROS) programming language with incorporated functions, both of which support the use of capabilities and can be used to efficiently and tightly integrate VDE functionality into commercial and user applications.

support user interaction through: (a) "Pop-Up" applications which, for example, provide messages to users and enable users to take specific actions such as approving a transaction, (b) stand-alone VDE applications that provide administrative environments for user activities such as: end-user preference specifications for limiting the price per transaction, unit of time, and/or session, for accessing history information concerning previous transactions, for reviewing financial information such as budgets, expenditures (e.g. detailed and/or summary) and usage analysis information, and (c) VDE aware applications which, as a result of the use of a VDE API and/or a transaction management (for

example, ROS based) programming language
embeds VDE "awareness" into commercial or
internal software (application programs, games, etc.)
so that VDE user control information and services
are seamlessly integrated into such software and can
be directly accessed by a user since the underlying
functionality has been integrated into the
commercial software's native design. For example,
in a VDE aware word processor application, a user
may be able to "print" a document into a VDE
content container object, applying specific control
information by selecting from amongst a series of
different menu templates for different purposes (for
example, a confidential memo template for internal
organization purposes may restrict the ability to
"keep," that is to make an electronic copy of the
memo).

! employ "templates" to ease the process of configuring
capabilities of the present invention as they relate to
specific industries or businesses. Templates are
applications or application add-ons under the
present invention. Templates support the efficient
specification and/or manipulation of criteria related
to specific content types, distribution approaches,

pricing mechanisms, user interactions with content
and/or administrative activities, and/or the like.

Given the very large range of capabilities and
configurations supported by the present invention,
5 reducing the range of configuration opportunities to
a manageable subset particularly appropriate for a
given business model allows the full configurable
power of the present invention to be easily employed
by "typical" users who would be otherwise burdened
10 with complex programming and/or configuration
design responsibilities template applications can also
help ensure that VDE related processes are secure
and optimally bug free by reducing the risks
associated with the contribution of independently
15 developed load modules, including unpredictable
aspects of code interaction between independent
modules and applications, as well as security risks
associated with possible presence of viruses in such
modules. VDE, through the use of templates,
20 reduces typical user configuration responsibilities to
an appropriately focused set of activities including
selection of method types (e.g. functionality) through
menu choices such as multiple choice, icon selection,
and/or prompting for method parameter data (such
25 as identification information, prices, budget limits,

dates, periods of time, access rights to specific content, etc.) that supply appropriate and/or necessary data for control information purposes. By limiting the typical (non-programming) user to a limited subset of configuration activities whose general configuration environment (template) has been preset to reflect general requirements corresponding to that user, or a content or other business model can very substantially limit difficulties associated with content containerization (including placing initial control information on content), distribution, client administration, electronic agreement implementation, end-user interaction, and clearinghouse activities, including associated interoperability problems (such as conflicts resulting from security, operating system, and/or certification incompatibilities). Use of appropriate VDE templates can assure users that their activities related to content VDE containerization, contribution of other control information, communications, encryption techniques and/or keys, etc. will be in compliance with specifications for their distributed VDE arrangement. VDE templates constitute preset configurations that can normally be reconfigurable

to allow for new and/or modified templates that reflect adaptation into new industries as they evolve or to reflect the evolution or other change of an existing industry. For example, the template concept may be used to provide individual, overall frameworks for organizations and individuals that create, modify, market, distribute, consume, and/or otherwise use movies, audio recordings and live performances, magazines, telephony based retail sales, catalogs, computer software, information data bases, multimedia, commercial communications, advertisements, market surveys, infomercials, games, CAD/CAM services for numerically controlled machines, and the like. As the context surrounding these templates changes or evolves, template applications provided under the present invention may be modified to meet these changes for broad use, or for more focused activities. A given VDE participant may have a plurality of templates available for different tasks. A party that places content in its initial VDE container may have a variety of different, configurable templates depending on the type of content and/or business model related to the content. An end-user may have different configurable templates that can be applied

to different document types (e-mail, secure internal documents, database records, etc.) and/or subsets of users (applying differing general sets of control information to different bodies of users, for example, selecting a list of users who may, under certain preset criteria, use a certain document). Of course, templates may, under certain circumstances have fixed control information and not provide for user selections or parameter data entry.

support plural, different control models regulating the use and/or auditing of either the same specific copy of electronic information content and/or differently regulating different copies (occurrences) of the same electronic information content. Differing models for billing, auditing, and security can be applied to the same piece of electronic information content and such differing sets of control information may employ, for control purposes, the same, or differing, granularities of electronic information control increments. This includes supporting variable control information for budgeting and auditing usage as applied to a variety of predefined increments of electronic information, including employing a variety of different budgets and/or

metering increments for a given electronic
information deliverable for: billing units of measure,
credit limit, security budget limit and security
content metering increments, and/or market
5 surveying and customer profiling content metering
increments. For example, a CD-ROM disk with a
database of scientific articles might be in part billed
according to a formula based on the number of bytes
decrypted, number of articles containing said bytes
10 decrypted, while a security budget might limit the
use of said database to no more than 5% of the
database per month for users on the wide area
network it is installed on.

15 ! provide mechanisms to persistently maintain trusted
content usage and reporting control information
through both a sufficiently secure chain of handling
of content and content control information and
through various forms of usage of such content
20 wherein said persistence of control may survive such
use. Persistence of control includes the ability to
extract information from a VDE container object by
creating a new container whose contents are at least
in part secured and that contains both the extracted
25 content and at least a portion of the control

information which control information of the original container and/or are at least in part produced by control information of the original container for this purpose and/or VDE installation control information stipulates should persist and/or control usage of content in the newly formed container. Such control information can continue to manage usage of container content if the container is "embedded" into another VDE managed object, such as an object which contains plural embedded VDE containers, each of which contains content derived (extracted) from a different source.

! enables users, other value chain participants (such as clearinghouses and government agencies), and/or user organizations, to specify preferences or requirements related to their use of electronic content and/or appliances. Content users, such as end-user customers using commercially distributed content (games, information resources, software programs, etc.), can define, if allowed by senior control information, budgets, and/or other control information, to manage their own internal use of content. Uses include, for example, a user setting a limit on the price for electronic documents that the

user is willing to pay without prior express user authorization, and the user establishing the character of metering information he or she is willing to allow to be collected (privacy protection).

5 This includes providing the means for content users to protect the privacy of information derived from their use of a VDE installation and content and/or appliance usage auditing. In particular, VDE can prevent information related to a participant's usage
10 of electronic content from being provided to other parties without the participant's tacit or explicit agreement.

! provide mechanisms that allow control information
15 to "evolve" and be modified according, at least in part, to independently, securely delivered further control information. Said control information may include executable code (e.g., load modules) that has been certified as acceptable (e.g., reliable and
20 trusted) for use with a specific VDE application, class of applications, and/or a VDE distributed arrangement. This modification (evolution) of control information can occur upon content control information (load modules and any associated data)
25 circulating to one or more VDE participants in a

pathway of handling of control information, or it may occur upon control information being received from a VDE participant. Handlers in a pathway of handling of content control information, to the extent each is authorized, can establish, modify, and/or contribute to, permission, auditing, payment, and reporting control information related to controlling, analyzing, paying for, and/or reporting usage of, electronic content and/or appliances (for example, as related to usage of VDE controlled property content). Independently delivered (from an independent source which is independent except in regards to certification), at least in part secure, control information can be employed to securely modify content control information when content control information has flowed from one party to another party in a sequence of VDE content control information handling. This modification employs, for example, one or more VDE component assemblies being securely processed in a VDE secure subsystem. In an alternate embodiment, control information may be modified by a senior party through use of their VDE installation secure sub-system after receiving submitted, at least in part secured, control information from a "junior" party, normally in the

form of a VDE administrative object. Control information passing along VDE pathways can represent a mixed control set, in that it may include: control information that persisted through a sequence of control information handlers, other control information that was allowed to be modified, and further control information representing new control information and/or mediating data. Such a control set represents an evolution of control information for disseminated content. In this example the overall content control set for a VDE content container is "evolving" as it securely (e.g. communicated in encrypted form and using authentication and digital signaturing techniques) passes, at least in part, to a new participant's VDE installation where the proposed control information is securely received and handled. The received control information may be integrated (through use of the receiving parties' VDE installation secure sub-system) with in-place control information through a negotiation process involving both control information sets. For example, the modification, within the secure sub-system of a content provider's VDE installation, of content control information for a certain VDE content container may have occurred as

a result of the incorporation of required control
information provided by a financial credit provider.
Said credit provider may have employed their VDE
installation to prepare and securely communicate
5 (directly or indirectly) said required control
information to said content provider. Incorporating
said required control information enables a content
provider to allow the credit provider's credit to be
employed by a content end-user to compensate for
10 the end-user's use of VDE controlled content and/or
appliances, so long as said end-user has a credit
account with said financial credit provider and said
credit account has sufficient credit available.
Similarly, control information requiring the payment
15 of taxes and/or the provision of revenue information
resulting from electronic commerce activities may be
securely received by a content provider. This control
information may be received, for example, from a
government agency. Content providers might be
20 required by law to incorporate such control
information into the control information for
commercially distributed content and/or services
related to appliance usage. Proposed control
information is used to an extent allowed by senior
25 control information and as determined by any

negotiation trade-offs that satisfy priorities stipulated by each set (the received set and the proposed set). VDE also accommodates different control schemes specifically applying to different participants (e.g., individual participants and/or participant classes (types)) in a network of VDE content handling participants.

! support multiple simultaneous control models for the same content property and/or property portion.

This allows, for example, for concurrent business activities which are dependent on electronic commercial product content distribution, such as acquiring detailed market survey information and/or supporting advertising, both of which can increase revenue and result in lower content costs to users and greater value to content providers. Such control information and/or overall control models may be applied, as determined or allowed by control information, in differing manners to different participants in a pathway of content, reporting, payment, and/or related control information handling. VDE supports applying different content control information to the same and/or different content and/or appliance usage related activities,

and/or to different parties in a content and/or
appliance usage model, such that different parties
(or classes of VDE users, for example) are subject to
differing control information managing their use of
5 electronic information content. For example,
differing control models based on the category of a
user as a distributor of a VDE controlled content
object or an end-user of such content may result in
different budgets being applied. Alternatively, for
10 example, a one distributor may have the right to
distribute a different array of properties than
another distributor (from a common content
collection provided, for example, on optical disc). An
individual, and/or a class or other grouping of
15 end-users, may have different costs (for example, a
student, senior citizen, and/or poor citizen user of
content who may be provided with the same or
differing discounts) than a "typical" content user.

20 ! support provider revenue information resulting from
customer use of content and/or appliances, and/or
provider and/or end-user payment of taxes, through
the transfer of credit and/or electronic currency from
said end-user and/or provider to a government
25 agency, might occur "automatically" as a result of

such received control information causing the generation of a VDE content container whose content includes customer content usage information reflecting secure, trusted revenue summary information and/or detailed user transaction listings (level of detail might depend, for example on type or size of transaction—information regarding a bank interest payment to a customer or a transfer of a large (e.g. over \$10,000) might be, by law, automatically reported to the government). Such summary and/or detailed information related to taxable events and/or currency, and/or creditor currency transfer, may be passed along a pathway of reporting and/or payment to the government in a VDE container. Such a container may also be used for other VDE related content usage reporting information.

! support the flowing of content control information through different “branches” of content control information handling so as to accommodate, under the present invention’s preferred embodiment, diverse controlled distributions of VDE controlled content. This allows different parties to employ the same initial electronic content with differing

(perhaps competitive) control strategies. In this instance, a party who first placed control information on content can make certain control assumptions and these assumptions would evolve into more specific and/or extensive control assumptions. These control assumptions can evolve during the branching sequence upon content model participants submitting control information changes, for example, for use in "negotiating" with "in place" content control information. This can result in new or modified content control information and/or it might involve the selection of certain one or more already "in-place" content usage control methods over in-place alternative methods, as well as the submission of relevant control information parameter data. This form of evolution of different control information sets applied to different copies of the same electronic property content and/or appliance results from VDE control information flowing "down" through different branches in an overall pathway of handling and control and being modified differently as it diverges down these different pathway branches. This ability of the present invention to support multiple pathway branches for the flow of both VDE content control

information and VDE managed content enables an electronic commerce marketplace which supports diverging, competitive business partnerships, agreements, and evolving overall business models which can employ the same content properties combined, for example, in differing collections of content representing differing at least in part competitive products.

enable a user to securely extract, through the use of the secure subsystem at the user's VDE installation, at least a portion of the content included within a VDE content container to produce a new, secure object (content container), such that the extracted information is maintained in a continually secure manner through the extraction process. Formation of the new VDE container containing such extracted content shall result in control information consistent with, or specified by, the source VDE content container, and/or local VDE installation secure subsystem as appropriate, content control information. Relevant control information, such as security and administrative information, derived, at least in part, from the parent (source) object's control information, will normally be automatically inserted

into a new VDE content container object containing
extracted VDE content. This process typically occurs
under the control framework of a parent object
and/or VDE installation control information
executing at the user's VDE installation secure
subsystem (with, for example, at least a portion of
this inserted control information being stored
securely in encrypted form in one or more
permissions records). In an alternative embodiment,
the derived content control information applied to
extracted content may be in part or whole derived
from, or employ, content control information stored
remotely from the VDE installation that performed
the secure extraction such as at a remote server
location. As with the content control information for
most VDE managed content, features of the present
invention allows the content's control information to:

- (a) "evolve," for example, the extractor of content
may add new control methods and/or modify
control parameter data, such as VDE
application compliant methods, to the extent
allowed by the content's in-place control
information. Such new control information
might specify, for example, who may use at

least a portion of the new object, and/or how
said at least a portion of said extracted content
may be used (e.g. when at least a portion may
be used, or what portion or quantity of
portions may be used);

5

(b) allow a user to combine additional content
with at least a portion of said extracted
content, such as material authored by the
extractor and/or content (for example, images,
video, audio, and/or text) extracted from one or
more other VDE container objects for
placement directly into the new container;

10

(c) allow a user to securely edit at least a portion
of said content while maintaining said content
in a secure form within said VDE content
container;

15

(d) append extracted content to a pre-existing
VDE content container object and attach
associated control information -- in these
cases, user added information may be secured,
e.g., encrypted, in part or as a whole, and may
be subject to usage and/or auditing control

20

25

information that differs from the those applied
to previously in place object content;

- 5 (e) preserve VDE control over one or more
portions of extracted content after various
forms of usage of said portions, for example,
maintain content in securely stored form while
allowing "temporary" on screen display of
content or allowing a software program to be
10 maintained in secure form but transiently
decrypt any encrypted executing portion of
said program (all, or only a portion, of said
program may be encrypted to secure the
program).

15
Generally, the extraction features of the present
invention allow users to aggregate and/or
disseminate and/or otherwise use protected
electronic content information extracted from
20 content container sources while maintaining secure
VDE capabilities thus preserving the rights of
providers in said content information after various
content usage processes.

! support the aggregation of portions of VDE
controlled content, such portions being subject to
differing VDE content container control information,
wherein various of said portions may have been
5 provided by independent, different content providers
from one or more different locations remote to the
user performing the aggregation. Such aggregation,
in the preferred embodiment of the present
invention, may involve preserving at least a portion
10 of the control information (e.g., executable code such
as load modules) for each of various of said portions
by, for example, embedding some or all of such
portions individually as VDE content container
objects within an overall VDE content container
15 and/or embedding some or all of such portions
directly into a VDE content container. In the latter
case, content control information of said content
container may apply differing control information
sets to various of such portions based upon said
20 portions original control information requirements
before aggregation. Each of such embedded VDE
content containers may have its own control
information in the form of one or more permissions
records. Alternatively, a negotiation between control
25 information associated with various aggregated

portions of electronic content, may produce a control information set that would govern some or all of the aggregated content portions. The VDE content control information produced by the negotiation may
5 be uniform (such as having the same load modules and/or component assemblies, and/or it may apply differing such content control information to two or more portions that constitute an aggregation of VDE controlled content such as differing metering,
10 budgeting, billing and/or payment models. For example, content usage payment may be automatically made, either through a clearinghouse, or directly, to different content providers for different portions.

15

enable flexible metering of, or other collection of information related to, use of electronic content and/or electronic appliances. A feature of the present invention enables such flexibility of metering
20 control mechanisms to accommodate a simultaneous, broad array of: (a) different parameters related to electronic information content use; (b) different increment units (bytes, documents, properties, paragraphs, images, etc.) and/or other organizations
25 of such electronic content; and/or (c) different

categories of user and/or VDE installation types, such as client organizations, departments, projects, networks, and/or individual users, etc. This feature of the present invention can be employed for content security, usage analysis (for example, market surveying), and/or compensation based upon the use and/or exposure to VDE managed content. Such metering is a flexible basis for ensuring payment for content royalties, licensing, purchasing, and/or advertising. A feature of the present invention provides for payment means supporting flexible electronic currency and credit mechanisms, including the ability to securely maintain audit trails reflecting information related to use of such currency or credit. VDE supports multiple differing hierarchies of client organization control information wherein an organization client administrator distributes control information specifying the usage rights of departments, users, and/or projects. Likewise, a department (division) network manager can function as a distributor (budgets, access rights, etc.) for department networks, projects, and/or users, etc.

! provide scalable, integratable, standardized control means for use on electronic appliances ranging from inexpensive consumer (for example, television set-top appliances) and professional devices (and
5 hand-held PDAs) to servers, mainframes, communication switches, etc. The scalable transaction management/auditing technology of the present invention will result in more efficient and reliable interoperability amongst devices functioning
10 in electronic commerce and/or data security environments. As standardized physical containers have become essential to the shipping of physical goods around the world, allowing these physical containers to universally "fit" unloading equipment,
15 efficiently use truck and train space, and accommodate known arrays of objects (for example, boxes) in an efficient manner, so VDE electronic content containers may, as provided by the present invention, be able to efficiently move electronic
20 information content (such as commercially published properties, electronic currency and credit, and content audit information), and associated content control information, around the world. Interoperability is fundamental to efficient electronic
25 commerce. The design of the VDE foundation, VDE

load modules, and VDE containers, are important features that enable the VDE node operating environment to be compatible with a very broad range of electronic appliances. The ability, for example, for control methods based on load modules to execute in very "small" and inexpensive secure sub-system environments, such as environments with very little read/write memory, while also being able to execute in large memory sub-systems that may be used in more expensive electronic appliances, supports consistency across many machines. This consistent VDE operating environment, including its control structures and container architecture, enables the use of standardized VDE content containers across a broad range of device types and host operating environments. Since VDE capabilities can be seamlessly integrated as extensions, additions, and/or modifications to fundamental capabilities of electronic appliances and host operating systems, VDE containers, content control information, and the VDE foundation will be able to work with many device types and these device types will be able to consistently and efficiently interpret and enforce VDE control information. Through this integration users can also

benefit from a transparent interaction with many of
the capabilities of VDE. VDE integration with
software operating on a host electronic appliance
supports a variety of capabilities that would be
5 unavailable or less secure without such integration.
Through integration with one or more device
applications and/or device operating environments,
many capabilities of the present invention can be
presented as inherent capabilities of a given
10 electronic appliance, operating system, or appliance
application. For example, features of the present
invention include: (a) VDE system software to in
part extend and/or modify host operating systems
such that they possesses VDE capabilities, such as
15 enabling secure transaction processing and
electronic information storage; (b) one or more
application programs that in part represent tools
associated with VDE operation; and/or (c) code to be
integrated into application programs, wherein such
20 code incorporates references into VDE system
software to integrate VDE capabilities and makes
such applications VDE aware (for example, word
processors, database retrieval applications,
spreadsheets, multimedia presentation authoring
25 tools, film editing software, music editing software

such as MIDI applications and the like, robotics control systems such as those associated with CAD/CAM environments and NCM software and the like, electronic mail systems, teleconferencing software, and other data authoring, creating, handling, and/or usage applications including combinations of the above). These one or more features (which may also be implemented in firmware or hardware) may be employed in conjunction with a VDE node secure hardware processing capability, such as a microcontroller(s), microprocessor(s), other CPU(s) or other digital processing logic.

! employ audit reconciliation and usage pattern evaluation processes that assess, through certain, normally network based, transaction processing reconciliation and threshold checking activities, whether certain violations of security of a VDE arrangement have occurred. These processes are performed remote to VDE controlled content end-user VDE locations by assessing, for example, purchases, and/or requests, for electronic properties by a given VDE installation. Applications for such reconciliation activities include assessing whether

the quantity of remotely delivered VDE controlled content corresponds to the amount of financial credit and/or electronic currency employed for the use of such content. A trusted organization can acquire information from content providers concerning the cost for content provided to a given VDE installation and/or user and compare this cost for content with the credit and/or electronic currency disbursements for that installation and/or user. Inconsistencies in the amount of content delivered versus the amount of disbursement can prove, and/or indicate, depending on the circumstances, whether the local VDE installation has been, at least to some degree, compromised (for example, certain important system security functions, such as breaking encryption for at least some portion of the secure subsystem and/or VDE controlled content by uncovering one or more keys). Determining whether irregular patterns (e.g. unusually high demand) of content usage, or requests for delivery of certain kinds of VDE controlled information during a certain time period by one or more VDE installations and/or users (including, for example, groups of related users whose aggregate pattern of usage is suspicious) may also be useful in determining whether security at

5 such one or more installations, and/or by such one or more users, has been compromised, particularly when used in combination with an assessment of electronic credit and/or currency provided to one or more VDE users and/or installations, by some or all of their credit and/or currency suppliers, compared with the disbursements made by such users and/or installations.

10 ! support security techniques that materially increase the time required to "break" a system's integrity. This includes using a collection of techniques that minimizes the damage resulting from comprising some aspect of the security features of the present inventions.

15

! provide a family of authoring, administrative, reporting, payment, and billing tool user applications that comprise components of the present invention's trusted/secure, universe wide, distributed transaction control and administration system.

20 These components support VDE related: object creation (including placing control information on content), secure object distribution and management (including distribution control information, financial

25

related, and other usage analysis), client internal VDE activities administration and control, security management, user interfaces, payment disbursement, and clearinghouse related functions.

5 These components are designed to support highly secure, uniform, consistent, and standardized: electronic commerce and/or data security pathway(s) of handling, reporting, and/or payment; content control and administration; and human factors (e.g.
10 user interfaces).

! support the operation of a plurality of clearinghouses, including, for example, both financial and user clearinghouse activities, such as
15 those performed by a client administrator in a large organization to assist in the organization's use of a VDE arrangement, including usage information analysis, and control of VDE activities by individuals and groups of employees such as specifying budgets
20 and the character of usage rights available under VDE for certain groups of and/or individual, client personnel, subject to control information series to control information submitted by the client administrator. At a clearinghouse, one or more VDE
25 installations may operate together with a trusted

distributed database environment (which may include concurrent database processing means). A financial clearinghouse normally receives at its location securely delivered content usage information, and user requests (such as requests for further credit, electronic currency, and/or higher credit limit). Reporting of usage information and user requests can be used for supporting electronic currency, billing, payment and credit related activities, and/or for user profile analysis and/or broader market survey analysis and marketing (consolidated) list generation or other information derived, at least in part, from said usage information. this information can be provided to content providers or other parties, through secure, authenticated encrypted communication to the VDE installation secure subsystems. Clearinghouse processing means would normally be connected to specialized I/O means, which may include high speed telecommunication switching means that may be used for secure communications between a clearinghouse and other VDE pathway participants.

securely support electronic currency and credit usage control, storage, and communication at, and

between, VDE installations. VDE further supports automated passing of electronic currency and/or credit information, including payment tokens (such as in the form of electronic currency or credit) or other payment information, through a pathway of payment, which said pathway may or may not be the same as a pathway for content usage information reporting. Such payment may be placed into a VDE container created automatically by a VDE installation in response to control information stipulating the "withdrawal" of credit or electronic currency from an electronic credit or currency account based upon an amount owed resulting from usage of VDE controlled electronic content and/or appliances. Payment credit or currency may then be automatically communicated in protected (at least in part encrypted) form through telecommunication of a VDE container to an appropriate party such as a clearinghouse, provider of original property content or appliance, or an agent for such provider (other than a clearinghouse). Payment information may be packaged in said VDE content container with, or without, related content usage information, such as metering information. An aspect of the present invention further enables certain information

regarding currency use to be specified as unavailable
to certain, some, or all VDE parties ("conditionally"
to fully anonymous currency) and/or further can
regulate certain content information, such as
5 currency and/or credit use related information
(and/or other electronic information usage data) to be
available only under certain strict circumstances,
such as a court order (which may itself require
authorization through the use of a court controlled
10 VDE installation that may be required to securely
access "conditionally" anonymous information).
Currency and credit information, under the
preferred embodiment of the present invention, is
treated as administrative content;

15

! support fingerprinting (also known as
watermarking) for embedding in content such that
when content protected under the present invention
is released in clear form from a VDE object
20 (displayed, printed, communicated, extracted, and/or
saved), information representing the identification of
the user and/or VDE installation responsible for
transforming the content into clear form is
embedded into the released content. Fingerprinting
25 is useful in providing an ability to identify who

5 extracted information in clear form a VDE container,
or who made a copy of a VDE object or a portion of
its contents. Since the identity of the user and/or
other identifying information may be embedded in
an obscure or generally concealed manner, in VDE
container content and/or control information,
potential copyright violators may be deterred from
unauthorized extraction or copying. Fingerprinting
normally is embedded into unencrypted electronic
content or control information, though it can be
embedded into encrypted content and later placed in
unencrypted content in a secure VDE installation
sub-system as the encrypted content carrying the
fingerprinting information is decrypted. Electronic
information, such as the content of a VDE container,
may be fingerprinted as it leaves a network (such as
Internet) location bound for a receiving party. Such
repository information may be maintained in
unencrypted form prior to communication and be
encrypted as it leaves the repository. Fingerprinting
would preferably take place as the content leaves the
repository, but before the encryption step.
Encrypted repository content can be decrypted, for
example in a secure VDE sub-system, fingerprint
information can be inserted, and then the content

can be re-encrypted for transmission. Embedding identification information of the intended recipient user and/or VDE installation into content as it leaves, for example, an Internet repository, would provide important information that would identify or assist in identifying any party that managed to compromise the security of a VDE installation or the delivered content. If a party produces an authorized clear form copy of VDE controlled content, including making unauthorized copies of an authorized clear form copy, fingerprint information would point back to that individual and/or his or her VDE installation. Such hidden information will act as a strong disincentive that should dissuade a substantial portion of potential content "pirates" from stealing other parties electronic information. Fingerprint information identifying a receiving party and/or VDE installation can be embedded into a VDE object before, or during, decryption, replication, or communication of VDE content objects to receivers. Fingerprinting electronic content before it is encrypted for transfer to a customer or other user provides information that can be very useful for identifying who received certain content which may have then been distributed or made available in

unencrypted form. This information would be useful in tracking who may have "broken" the security of a VDE installation and was illegally making certain electronic content available to others.

5 Fingerprinting may provide additional, available information such as time and/or date of the release (for example extraction) of said content information. Locations for inserting fingerprints may be specified by VDE installation and/or content container control
10 information. This information may specify that certain areas and/or precise locations within properties should be used for fingerprinting, such as one or more certain fields of information or information types. Fingerprinting information may
15 be incorporated into a property by modifying in a normally undetectable way color frequency and/or the brightness of certain image pixels, by slightly modifying certain audio signals as to frequency, by modifying font character formation, etc. Fingerprint
20 information, itself, should be encrypted so as to make it particularly difficult for tampered fingerprints to be interpreted as valid. Variations in fingerprint locations for different copies of the same property; "false" fingerprint information; and
25 multiple copies of fingerprint information within a

specific property or other content which copies
employ different fingerprinting techniques such as
information distribution patterns, frequency and/or
brightness manipulation, and encryption related
5 techniques, are features of the present invention for
increasing the difficulty of an unauthorized
individual identifying fingerprint locations and
erasing and/or modifying fingerprint information.

10 provide smart object agents that can carry requests,
data, and/or methods, including budgets,
authorizations, credit or currency, and content. For
example, smart objects may travel to and/or from
remote information resource locations and fulfill
15 requests for electronic information content. Smart
objects can, for example, be transmitted to a remote
location to perform a specified database search on
behalf of a user or otherwise "intelligently" search
remote one or more repositories of information for
20 user desired information. After identifying desired
information at one or more remote locations, by for
example, performing one or more database searches,
a smart object may return via communication to the
user in the form of a secure "return object"
25 containing retrieved information. A user may be

charged for the remote retrieving of information, the
returning of information to the user's VDE
installation, and/or the use of such information. In
the latter case, a user may be charged only for the
5 information in the return object that the user
actually uses. Smart objects may have the means to
request use of one or more services and/or resources.
Services include locating other services and/or
resources such as information resources, language or
10 format translation, processing, credit (or additional
credit) authorization, etc. Resources include
reference databases, networks, high powered or
specialized computing resources (the smart object
may carry information to another computer to be
15 efficiently processed and then return the information
to the sending VDE installation), remote object
repositories, etc. Smart objects can make efficient
use of remote resources (e.g. centralized databases,
super computers, etc.) while providing a secure
20 means for charging users based on information
and/or resources actually used.

! support both "translations" of VDE electronic
agreements elements into modern language printed
25 agreement elements (such as English language

agreements) and translations of electronic rights
protection/transaction management modern
language agreement elements to electronic VDE
agreement elements. This feature requires
5 maintaining a library of textual language that
corresponds to VDE load modules and/or methods
and/or component assemblies. As VDE methods are
proposed and/or employed for VDE agreements, a
listing of textual terms and conditions can be
10 produced by a VDE user application which, in a
preferred embodiment, provides phrases, sentences
and/or paragraphs that have been stored and
correspond to said methods and/or assemblies. This
feature preferably employs artificial intelligence
15 capabilities to analyze and automatically determine,
and/or assist one or more users to determine, the
proper order and relationship between the library
elements corresponding to the chosen methods
and/or assemblies so as to compose some or all
20 portions of a legal or descriptive document. One or
more users, and/or preferably an attorney (if the
document a legal, binding agreement), would review
the generated document material upon completion
and employ such additional textual information
25 and/or editing as necessary to describe non electronic

transaction elements of the agreement and make
any other improvements that may be necessary.
These features further support employing modern
language tools that allow one or more users to make
5 selections from choices and provide answers to
questions and to produce a VDE electronic
agreement from such a process. This process can be
interactive and the VDE agreement formulation
process may employ artificial intelligence expert
10 system technology that learns from responses and,
where appropriate and based at least in part on said
responses, provides further choices and/or questions
which "evolves" the desired VDE electronic
agreement.

15

! support the use of multiple VDE secure subsystems
in a single VDE installation. Various security and/or
performance advantages may be realized by
employing a distributed VDE design within a single
20 VDE installation. For example, designing a
hardware based VDE secure subsystem into an
electronic appliance VDE display device, and
designing said subsystem's integration with said
display device so that it is as close as possible to the
25 point of display, will increase the security for video

materials by making it materially more difficult to
“steal” decrypted video information as it moves from
outside to inside the video system. Ideally, for
example, a VDE secure hardware module would be
5 in the same physical package as the actual display
monitor, such as within the packaging of a video
monitor or other display device, and such device
would be designed, to the extent commercially
practical, to be as tamper resistant as reasonable.
10 As another example, embedding a VDE hardware
module into an I/O peripheral may have certain
advantages from the standpoint of overall system
throughput. If multiple VDE instances are employed
within the same VDE installation, these instances
15 will ideally share resources to the extent practical,
such as VDE instances storing certain control
information and content and/or appliance usage
information on the same mass storage device and in
the same VDE management database.
20
! requiring reporting and payment compliance by
employing exhaustion of budgets and time ageing of
keys. For example, a VDE commercial arrangement
and associated content control information may
25 involve a content provider’s content and the use of

clearinghouse credit for payment for end-user usage
of said content. Control information regarding said
arrangement may be delivered to a user's (of said
content) VDE installation and/or said financial
5 clearinghouse's VDE installation. Said control
information might require said clearinghouse to
prepare and telecommunicate to said content
provider both content usage based information in a
certain form, and content usage payment in the form
10 of electronic credit (such credit might be "owned" by
the provider after receipt and used in lieu of the
availability or adequacy of electronic currency)
and/or electronic currency. This delivery of
information and payment may employ trusted VDE
15 installation secure subsystems to securely, and in
some embodiments, automatically, provide in the
manner specified by said control information, said
usage information and payment content. Features of
the present invention help ensure that a
20 requirement that a clearinghouse report such usage
information and payment content will be observed.
For example, if one participant to a VDE electronic
agreement fails to observe such information
reporting and/or paying obligation, another
25 participant can stop the delinquent party from

successfully participating in VDE activities related to such agreement. For example, if required usage information and payment was not reported as specified by content control information, the "injured" party can fail to provide, through failing to securely communicate from his VDE installation secure subsystem, one or more pieces of secure information necessary for the continuance of one or more critical processes. For example, failure to report information and/or payment from a clearinghouse to a content provider (as well as any security failures or other disturbing irregularities) can result in the content provider not providing key and/or budget refresh information to the clearinghouse, which information can be necessary to authorize use of the clearinghouse's credit for usage of the provider's content and which the clearinghouse would communicate to end-user's during a content usage reporting communication between the clearinghouse and end-user. As another example, a distributor that failed to make payments and/or report usage information to a content provider might find that their budget for creating permissions records to distribute the content provider's content to users, and/or a security budget

limiting one or more other aspect of their use of the provider's content, are not being refreshed by the content provider, once exhausted or timed-out (for example, at a predetermined date). In these and
5 other cases, the offended party might decide not to refresh time ageing keys that had "aged out." Such a use of time aged keys has a similar impact as failing to refresh budgets or time-aged authorizations.

10 support smart card implementations of the present invention in the form of portable electronic appliances, including cards that can be employed as secure credit, banking, and/or money cards. A feature of the present invention is the use of portable
15 VDEs as transaction cards at retail and other establishments, wherein such cards can "dock" with an establishment terminal that has a VDE secure sub-system and/or an online connection to a VDE secure and/or otherwise secure and compatible
20 subsystem, such as a "trusted" financial clearinghouse (e.g., VISA, Mastercard). The VDE card and the terminal (and/or online connection) can securely exchange information related to a transaction, with credit and/or electronic currency
25 being transferred to a merchant and/or

clearinghouse and transaction information flowing
back to the card. Such a card can be used for
transaction activities of all sorts. A docking station,
such as a PCMCIA connector on an electronic
5 appliance, such as a personal computer, can receive
a consumer's VDE card at home. Such a station/card
combination can be used for on-line transactions in
the same manner as a VDE installation that is
permanently installed in such an electronic
10 appliance. The card can be used as an "electronic
wallet" and contain electronic currency as well as
credit provided by a clearinghouse. The card can act
as a convergence point for financial activities of a
consumer regarding many, if not all, merchant,
15 banking, and on-line financial transactions,
including supporting home banking activities. A
consumer can receive his paycheck and/or
investment earnings and/or "authentic" VDE content
container secured detailed information on such
20 receipts, through on-line connections. A user can
send digital currency to another party with a VDE
arrangement, including giving away such currency.
A VDE card can retain details of transactions in a
highly secure and database organized fashion so that
25 financially related information is both consolidated

and very easily retrieved and/or analyzed. Because
of the VDE security, including use of effective
encryption, authentication, digital signaturing, and
secure database structures, the records contained
5 within a VDE card arrangement may be accepted as
valid transaction records for government and/or
corporate recordkeeping requirements. In some
embodiments of the present invention a VDE card
may employ docking station and/or electronic
10 appliance storage means and/or share other VDE
arrangement means local to said appliance and/or
available across a network, to augment the
information storage capacity of the VDE card, by for
example, storing dated, and/or archived, backup
15 information. Taxes relating to some or all of an
individual's financial activities may be automatically
computed based on "authentic" information securely
stored and available to said VDE card. Said
information may be stored in said card, in said
20 docking station, in an associated electronic
appliance, and/or other device operatively attached
thereto, and/or remotely, such as at a remote server
site. A card's data, e.g. transaction history, can be
backed up to an individual's personal computer or
25 other electronic appliance and such an appliance

may have an integrated VDE installation of its own.
A current transaction, recent transactions (for
redundancy), or all or other selected card data may
be backed up to a remote backup repository, such a
5 VDE compatible repository at a financial
clearinghouse, during each or periodic docking for a
financial transaction and/or information
communication such as a user/merchant transaction.
Backing up at least the current transaction during a
10 connection with another party's VDE installation
(for example a VDE installation that is also on a
financial or general purpose electronic network), by
posting transaction information to a remote
clearinghouse and/or bank, can ensure that
15 sufficient backup is conducted to enable complete
reconstruction of VDE card internal information in
the event of a card failure or loss.

! support certification processes that ensure
20 authorized interoperability between various VDE
installations so as to prevent VDE arrangements
and/or installations that unacceptably deviate in
specification protocols from other VDE arrangements
and/or installations from interoperating in a manner
25 that may introduce security (integrity and/or

confidentiality of VDE secured information), process control, and/or software compatibility problems.

Certification validates the identity of VDE installations and/or their components, as well as VDE users. Certification data can also serve as information that contributes to determining the decommissioning or other change related to VDE sites.

support the separation of fundamental transaction control processes through the use of event (triggered) based method control mechanisms. These event methods trigger one or more other VDE methods (which are available to a secure VDE sub-system) and are used to carry out VDE managed transaction related processing. These triggered methods include independently (separably) and securely processable component billing management methods, budgeting management methods, metering management methods, and related auditing management processes. As a result of this feature of the present invention, independent triggering of metering, auditing, billing, and budgeting methods, the present invention is able to efficiently, concurrently support multiple financial currencies (e.g. dollars,

marks, yen) and content related budgets, and/or
billing increments as well as very flexible content
distribution models.

5 ! support, complete, modular separation of the control
structures related to (1) content event triggering, (2)
auditing, (3) budgeting (including specifying no right
of use or unlimited right of use), (4) billing, and (5)
user identity (VDE installation, client name,
10 department, network, and/or user, etc.). The
independence of these VDE control structures
provides a flexible system which allows plural
relationships between two or more of these
structures, for example, the ability to associate a
15 financial budget with different event trigger
structures (that are put in place to enable controlling
content based on its logical portions). Without such
separation between these basic VDE capabilities, it
would be more difficult to efficiently maintain
20 separate metering, budgeting, identification, and/or
billing activities which involve the same, differing
(including overlapping), or entirely different,
portions of content for metering, billing, budgeting,
and user identification, for example, paying fees
25 associated with usage of content, performing home

banking, managing advertising services, etc. VDE modular separation of these basic capabilities supports the programming of plural, "arbitrary" relationships between one or differing content portions (and/or portion units) and budgeting, auditing, and/or billing control information. For example, under VDE, a budget limit of \$200 dollars or 300 German Marks a month may be enforced for decryption of a certain database and 2 U.S. Dollars or 3 German Marks may be charged for each record of said database decrypted (depending on user selected currency). Such usage can be metered while an additional audit for user profile purposes can be prepared recording the identity of each filed displayed. Additionally, further metering can be conducted regarding the number of said database bytes that have been decrypted, and a related security budget may prevent the decrypting of more than 5% of the total bytes of said database per year. The user may also, under VDE (if allowed by senior control information), collect audit information reflecting usage of database fields by different individuals and client organization departments and ensure that differing rights of access and differing budgets limiting database usage can be applied to

these client individuals and groups. Enabling
content providers and users to practically employ
such diverse sets of user identification, metering,
budgeting, and billing control information results, in
part, from the use of such independent control
capabilities. As a result, VDE can support great
configurability in creation of plural control models
applied to the same electronic property and the same
and/or plural control models applied to differing or
entirely different content models (for example, home
banking versus electronic shopping).

Methods, Other Control Information, and VDE Objects

VDE control information (e.g., methods) that collectively
control use of VDE managed properties (database, document,
individual commercial product), are either shipped with the
content itself (for example, in a content container) and/or one or
more portions of such control information is shipped to
distributors and/or other users in separably deliverable
“administrative objects.” A subset of the methods for a property
may in part be delivered with each property while one or more
other subsets of methods can be delivered separately to a user or
otherwise made available for use (such as being available
remotely by telecommunication means). Required methods
(methods listed as required for property and/or appliance use)

must be available as specified if VDE controlled content (such as intellectual property distributed within a VDE content container) is to be used. Methods that control content may apply to a plurality of VDE container objects, such as a class or other grouping of such objects. Methods may also be required by certain users or classes of users and/or VDE installations and/or classes of installations for such parties to use one or more specific, or classes of, objects.

10 A feature of VDE provided by the present invention is that certain one or more methods can be specified as required in order for a VDE installation and/or user to be able to use certain and/or all content. For example, a distributor of a certain type of content might be allowed by "senior" participants (by content creators, for example) to require a method which prohibits end-users from electronically saving decrypted content, a provider of credit for VDE transactions might require an audit method that records the time of an electronic purchase, and/or a user might require a method that summarizes usage information for reporting to a clearinghouse (e.g. billing information) in a way that does not convey confidential, personal information regarding detailed usage behavior.

25 A further feature of VDE provided by the present invention is that creators, distributors, and users of content can select from

among a set of predefined methods (if available) to control
container content usage and distribution functions and/or they
may have the right to provide new customized methods to control
at least certain usage functions (such "new" methods may be
5 required to be certified for trustedness and interoperability to the
VDE installation and/or for of a group of VDE applications). As a
result, VDE provides a very high degree of configurability with
respect to how the distribution and other usage of each property
or object (or one or more portions of objects or properties as
10 desired and/or applicable) will be controlled. Each VDE
participant in a VDE pathway of content control information may
set methods for some or all of the content in a VDE container, so
long as such control information does not conflict with senior
control information already in place with respect to:

- 15
- (1) certain or all VDE managed content,
 - (2) certain one or more VDE users and/or groupings of
users,
 - 20 (3) certain one or more VDE nodes and/or groupings of
nodes, and/or
 - (4) certain one or more VDE applications and/or
25 arrangements.

For example, a content creator's VDE control information for certain content can take precedence over other submitted VDE participant control information and, for example, if allowed by senior control information, a content distributor's control information may itself take precedence over a client administrator's control information, which may take precedence over an end-user's control information. A path of distribution participant's ability to set such electronic content control information can be limited to certain control information (for example, method mediating data such as pricing and/or sales dates) or it may be limited only to the extent that one or more of the participant's proposed control information conflicts with control information set by senior control information submitted previously by participants in a chain of handling of the property, or managed in said participant's VDE secure subsystem.

VDE control information may, in part or in full, (a) represent control information directly put in place by VDE content control information pathway participants, and/or (b) comprise control information put in place by such a participant on behalf of a party who does not directly handle electronic content (or electronic appliance) permissions records information (for example control information inserted by a participant on behalf of a financial clearinghouse or government agency). Such control information methods (and/or load modules and/or

mediating data and/or component assemblies) may also be put in place by either an electronic automated, or a semi-automated and human assisted, control information (control set) negotiating process that assesses whether the use of one or more pieces of submitted control information will be integrated into and/or replace existing control information (and/or chooses between alternative control information based upon interaction with in-place control information) and how such control information may be used.

10

Control information may be provided by a party who does not directly participate in the handling of electronic content (and/or appliance) and/or control information for such content (and/or appliance). Such control information may be provided in secure form using VDE installation secure sub-system managed communications (including, for example, authenticating the deliverer of at least in part encrypted control information) between such not directly participating one or more parties' VDE installation secure subsystems, and a pathway of VDE content control information participant's VDE installation secure subsystem. This control information may relate to, for example, the right to access credit supplied by a financial services provider, the enforcement of regulations or laws enacted by a government agency, or the requirements of a customer of VDE managed content usage information (reflecting usage of content

25

by one or more parties other than such customer) relating to the creation, handling and/or manner of reporting of usage information received by such customer. Such control information may, for example, enforce societal requirements such as laws
5 related to electronic commerce.

VDE content control information may apply differently to different pathway of content and/or control information handling participants. Furthermore, permissions records rights may be
10 added, altered, and/or removed by a VDE participant if they are allowed to take such action. Rights of VDE participants may be defined in relation to specific parties and/or categories of parties and/or other groups of parties in a chain of handling of content and/or content control information (e.g., permissions records).
15 Modifications to control information that may be made by a given, eligible party or parties, may be limited in the number of modifications, and/or degree of modification, they may make.

At least one secure subsystem in electronic appliances of
20 creators, distributors, auditors, clearinghouses, client administrators, and end-users (understanding that two or more of the above classifications may describe a single user) provides a "sufficiently" secure (for the intended applications) environment
for:

25

1. Decrypting properties and control information;
2. Storing control and metering related information;
- 5 3. Managing communications;
4. Processing core control programs, along with
associated data, that constitute control information
for electronic content and/or appliance rights
10 protection, including the enforcing of preferences
and requirements of VDE participants.

Normally, most usage, audit, reporting, payment, and
distribution control methods are themselves at least in part
15 encrypted and are executed by the secure subsystem of a VDE
installation. Thus, for example, billing and metering records can
be securely generated and updated, and encryption and
decryption keys are securely utilized, within a secure subsystem.
Since VDE also employs secure (e.g. encrypted and
20 authenticated) communications when passing information
between the participant location (nodes) secure subsystems of a
VDE arrangement, important components of a VDE electronic
agreement can be reliably enforced with sufficient security
(sufficiently trusted) for the intended commercial purposes. A
25 VDE electronic agreement for a value chain can be composed, at

least in part, of one or more subagreements between one or more subsets of the value chain participants. These subagreements are comprised of one or more electronic contract "compliance" elements (methods including associated parameter data) that
5 ensure the protection of the rights of VDE participants.

The degree of trustedness of a VDE arrangement will be primarily based on whether hardware SPUs are employed at participant location secure subsystems and the effectiveness of
10 the SPU hardware security architecture, software security techniques when an SPU is emulated in software, and the encryption algorithm(s) and keys that are employed for securing content, control information, communications, and access to VDE node (VDE installation) secure subsystems. Physical facility and
15 user identity authentication security procedures may be used instead of hardware SPUs at certain nodes, such as at an established financial clearinghouse, where such procedures may provide sufficient security for trusted interoperability with a VDE arrangement employing hardware SPUs at user nodes.

20

The updating of property management files at each location of a VDE arrangement, to accommodate new or modified control information, is performed in the VDE secure subsystem and under the control of secure management file updating
25 programs executed by the protected subsystem. Since all secure

communications are at least in part encrypted and the processing inside the secure subsystem is concealed from outside observation and interference, the present invention ensures that content control information can be enforced. As a result, the creator and/or distributor and/or client administrator and/or other contributor of secure control information for each property (for example, an end-user restricting the kind of audit information he or she will allow to be reported and/or a financial clearinghouse establishing certain criteria for use of its credit for payment for use of distributed content) can be confident that their contributed and accepted control information will be enforced (within the security limitations of a given VDE security implementation design). This control information can determine, for example:

(1) How and/or to whom electronic content can be provided, for example, how an electronic property can be distributed;

(2) How one or more objects and/or properties, or portions of an object or property, can be directly used, such as decrypted, displayed, printed, etc;

(3) How payment for usage of such content and/or content portions may or must be handled; and

- (4) How audit information about usage information related to at least a portion of a property should be collected, reported, and/or used.

5 Seniority of contributed control information, including resolution of conflicts between content control information submitted by multiple parties, is normally established by:

10 (1) the sequence in which control information is put in place by various parties (in place control information normally takes precedence over subsequently submitted control information),

15 (2) the specifics of VDE content and/or appliance control information. For example, in-place control information can stipulate which subsequent one or more piece of control from one or more parties or class of parties will take precedence over control information submitted by one or more yet different
20 parties and/or classes of parties, and/or

(3) negotiation between control information sets from plural parties, which negotiation establishes what control information shall constitute the resulting

control information set for a given piece of VDE
managed content and/or VDE installation.

Electronic Agreements and Rights Protection

5 An important feature of VDE is that it can be used to
assure the administration of, and adequacy of security and rights
protection for, electronic agreements implemented through the
use of the present invention. Such agreements may involve one
or more of:

10

(1) creators, publishers, and other distributors, of
electronic information,

(2) financial service (e.g. credit) providers,

15

(3) users of (other than financial service providers)
information arising from content usage such as
content specific demographic information and user
specific descriptive information. Such users may
20 include market analysts, marketing list compilers for
direct and directed marketing, and government
agencies,

20

(4) end users of content,

25

(5) infrastructure service and device providers such as telecommunication companies and hardware manufacturers (semiconductor and electronic appliance and/or other computer system manufacturers) who receive compensation based upon the use of their services and/or devices, and

(6) certain parties described by electronic information.

VDE supports commercially secure "extended" value chain electronic agreements. VDE can be configured to support the various underlying agreements between parties that comprise this extended agreement. These agreements can define important electronic commerce considerations including:

15

(1) security,

(2) content use control, including electronic distribution,

20

(3) privacy (regarding, for example, information concerning parties described by medical, credit, tax, personal, and/or of other forms of confidential information),

25

(4) management of financial processes, and

- (5) pathways of handling for electronic content, content and/or appliance control information, electronic content and/or appliance usage information and payment and/or credit.

5

VDE agreements may define the electronic commerce relationship of two or more parties of a value chain, but such agreements may, at times, not directly obligate or otherwise directly involve other VDE value chain participants. For example, an electronic agreement between a content creator and a distributor may establish both the price to the distributor for a creator's content (such as for a property distributed in a VDE container object) and the number of copies of this object that this distributor may distribute to end-users over a given period of time. In a second agreement, a value chain end-user may be involved in a three party agreement in which the end-user agrees to certain requirements for using the distributed product such as accepting distributor charges for content use and agreeing to observe the copyright rights of the creator. A third agreement might exist between the distributor and a financial clearinghouse that allows the distributor to employ the clearinghouse's credit for payment for the product if the end-user has a separate (fourth) agreement directly with the clearinghouse extending credit to the end-user. A fifth, evolving agreement may develop between all value chain participants as content control

25

information passes along its chain of handling. This evolving agreement can establish the rights of all parties to content usage information, including, for example, the nature of information to be received by each party and the pathway of handling of content usage information and related procedures. A sixth agreement in this example, may involve all parties to the agreement and establishes certain general assumptions, such as security techniques and degree of trustedness (for example, commercial integrity of the system may require each VDE installation secure subsystem to electronically warrant that their VDE node meets certain interoperability requirements). In the above example, these six agreements could comprise agreements of an extended agreement for this commercial value chain instance.

VDE agreements support evolving ("living") electronic agreement arrangements that can be modified by current and/or new participants through very simple to sophisticated "negotiations" between newly proposed content control information interacting with control information already in place and/or by negotiation between concurrently proposed content control information submitted by a plurality of parties. A given model may be asynchronously and progressively modified over time in accordance with existing senior rules and such modification may be applied to all, to classes of, and/or to specific content, and/or to classes and/or specific users and/or user nodes.

A given piece of content may be subject to different control information at different times or places of handling, depending on the evolution of its content control information (and/or on differing, applicable VDE installation content control information). The evolution of control information can occur during the passing along of one or more VDE control information containing objects, that is control information may be modified at one or more points along a chain of control information handling, so long as such modification is allowed. As a result, VDE managed content may have different control information applied at both different "locations" in a chain of content handling and at similar locations in differing chains of the handling of such content. Such different application of control information may also result from content control information specifying that a certain party or group of parties shall be subject to content control information that differs from another party or group of parties. For example, content control information for a given piece of content may be stipulated as senior information and therefore not changeable, might be put in place by a content creator and might stipulate that national distributors of a given piece of their content may be permitted to make 100,000 copies per calendar quarter, so long as such copies are provided to boni fide end-users, but may pass only a single copy of such content to a local retailers and the control information limits such a retailer to making no more than 1,000 copies per month for retail sales to

end-users. In addition, for example, an end-user of such content might be limited by the same content control information to making three copies of such content, one for each of three different computers he or she uses (one desktop computer at work, one for a desktop computer at home, and one for a portable computer).

Electronic agreements supported by the preferred embodiment of the present invention can vary from very simple to very elaborate. They can support widely diverse information management models that provide for electronic information security, usage administration, and communication and may support:

15

- (a) secure electronic distribution of information, for example commercial literary properties,
- (b) secure electronic information usage monitoring and reporting,
- (c) secure financial transaction capabilities related to both electronic information and/or appliance usage and other electronic credit and/or currency usage and administration capabilities,

20

25

- (d) privacy protection for usage information a user does not wish to release, and
- (e) "living" electronic information content dissemination models that flexibly accommodate:
- 5
- (1) a breadth of participants,
- (2) one or more pathways (chains) for: the
10 handling of content, content and/or appliance control information, reporting of content and/or appliance usage related information, and/or payment,
- 15 (3) supporting an evolution of terms and conditions incorporated into content control information, including use of electronic negotiation capabilities,
- 20 (4) support the combination of multiple pieces of content to form new content aggregations, and
- (5) multiple concurrent models.

Secure Processing Units

An important part of VDE provided by the present invention is the core secure transaction control arrangement, herein called an SPU (or SPUs), that typically must be present in each user's computer, other electronic appliance, or network. SPUs provide a trusted environment for generating decryption keys, encrypting and decrypting information, managing the secure communication of keys and other information between electronic appliances (i.e. between VDE installations and/or between plural VDE instances within a single VDE installation), securely accumulating and managing audit trail, reporting, and budget information in secure and/or non-secure non-volatile memory, maintaining a secure database of control information management instructions, and providing a secure environment for performing certain other control and administrative functions.

A hardware SPU (rather than a software emulation) within a VDE node is necessary if a highly trusted environment for performing certain VDE activities is required. Such a trusted environment may be created through the use of certain control software, one or more tamper resistant hardware modules such as a semiconductor or semiconductor chipset (including, for example, a tamper resistant hardware electronic appliance peripheral device), for use within, and/or operatively connected to, an electronic appliance. With the present invention, the

trustedness of a hardware SPU can be enhanced by enclosing some or all of its hardware elements within tamper resistant packaging and/or by employing other tamper resisting techniques (e.g. microfusing and/or thin wire detection techniques). A

5 trusted environment of the present invention implemented, in part, through the use of tamper resistant semiconductor design, contains control logic, such as a microprocessor, that securely executes VDE processes.

10 A VDE node's hardware SPU is a core component of a VDE secure subsystem and may employ some or all of an electronic appliance's primary control logic, such as a microcontroller, microcomputer or other CPU arrangement. This primary control logic may be otherwise employed for non VDE purposes such as

15 the control of some or all of an electronic appliance's non-VDE functions. When operating in a hardware SPU mode, said primary control logic must be sufficiently secure so as to protect and conceal important VDE processes. For example, a hardware SPU may employ a host electronic appliance microcomputer

20 operating in protected mode while performing VDE related activities, thus allowing portions of VDE processes to execute with a certain degree of security. This alternate embodiment is in contrast to the preferred embodiment wherein a trusted environment is created using a combination of one or more

25 tamper resistant semiconductors that are not part of said

primary control logic. In either embodiment, certain control information (software and parameter data) must be securely maintained within the SPU, and further control information can be stored externally and securely (e.g. in encrypted and tagged form) and loaded into said hardware SPU when needed. In many cases, and in particular with microcomputers, the preferred embodiment approach of employing special purpose secure hardware for executing said VDE processes, rather than using said primary control logic, may be more secure and efficient. The level of security and tamper resistance required for trusted SPU hardware processes depends on the commercial requirements of particular markets or market niches, and may vary widely.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other features and advantages provided by the present invention(s) may be better and more completely understood by referring to the following detailed description of presently preferred example embodiments in connection with the drawings, of which:

FIGURE 1 illustrates an example of a "Virtual Distribution Environment" provided in accordance with a preferred example/embodiment of this invention;

FIGURE 1A is a more detailed illustration of an example of the "Information Utility" shown in FIGURE 1;

FIGURE 2 illustrates an example of a chain of handling and control;

FIGURE 2A illustrates one example of how rules and control information may persist from one participant to another in the Figure 2 chain of handling and control;

FIGURE 3 shows one example of different control information that may be provided;

FIGURE 4 illustrates examples of some different types of rules and/or control information;

FIGURES 5A and 5B show an example of an "object";

FIGURE 6 shows an example of a Secure Processing Unit ("SPU");

FIGURE 7 shows an example of an electronic appliance;

FIGURE 8 is a more detailed block diagram of an example of the electronic appliance shown in FIGURE 7;

FIGURE 9 is a detailed view of an example of the Secure Processing Unit (SPU) shown in FIGURES 6 and 8;

FIGURE 10 shows an example of a "Rights Operating System" ("ROS") architecture provided by the Virtual Distribution Environment;

FIGURES 11A-11C show examples of functional relationship(s) between applications and the Rights Operating System;

5 FIGURES 11D-11J show examples of “components” and “component assemblies”;

FIGURE 12 is a more detailed diagram of an example of the Rights Operating System shown in FIGURE 10;

10

FIGURE 12A shows an example of how “objects” can be created;

FIGURE 13 is a detailed block diagram of an example the software architecture for a “protected processing environment” shown in FIGURE 12;

15

FIGURES 14A-14C are examples of SPU memory maps provided by the protected processing environment shown in FIGURE 13;

20

FIGURE 15 illustrates an example of how the channel services manager and load module execution manager of FIGURE 13 can support a channel;

5 FIGURE 15A is an example of a channel header and channel detail records shown in FIGURE 15;

FIGURE 15B is a flowchart of an example of program control steps that may be performed by the FIGURE 13 protected
10 processing environment to create a channel;

FIGURE 16 is a block diagram of an example of a secure data base structure;

15 FIGURE 17 is an illustration of an example of a logical object structure;

FIGURE 18 shows an example of a stationary object structure;

20

FIGURE 19 shows an example of a traveling object structure;

FIGURE 20 shows an example of a content object structure;

FIGURE 21 shows an example of an administrative object structure;

FIGURE 22 shows an example of a method core structure;

FIGURE 23 shows an example of a load module structure;

FIGURE 24 shows an example of a User Data Element (UDE) and/or Method Data Element (MDE) structure;

FIGURES 25A-25C show examples of "map meters";

FIGURE 26 shows an example of a permissions record (PERC) structure;

FIGURES 26A and 26B together show a more detailed example of a permissions record structure;

FIGURE 27 shows an example of a shipping table structure;

5 FIGURE 28 shows an example of a receiving table structure;

FIGURE 29 shows an example of an administrative event log structure;

10 FIGURE 30 shows an example inter-relationship between and use of the object registration table, subject table and user rights table shown in the FIGURE 16 secure database;

15 FIGURE 31 is a more detailed example of an object registration table shown in FIGURE 16;

FIGURE 32 is a more detailed example of subject table shown in FIGURE 16;

20 FIGURE 33 is a more detailed example of a user rights table shown in FIGURE 16;

FIGURE 34 shows a specific example of how a site record table and group record table may track portions of the secure database shown in FIGURE 16;

5 FIGURE 34A is an example of a FIGURE 34 site record table structure;

FIGURE 34B is an example of a FIGURE 34 group record table structure;

10

FIGURE 35 shows an example of a process for updating the secure database;

FIGURE 36 shows an example of how new elements may
15 be inserted into the FIGURE 16 secure data base;

FIGURE 37 shows an example of how an element of the secure database may be accessed;

20 FIGURE 38 is a flowchart example of how to protect a secure database element;

FIGURE 39 is a flowchart example of how to back up a
secure database;

5 FIGURE 40 is a flowchart example of how to recover a
secure database from a backup;

10 FIGURES 41A-41D are a set of examples showing how a
“chain of handling and control” may be enabled using “reciprocal
methods”;

15 FIGURES 42A-42D show an example of a “reciprocal”
BUDGET method;

20 FIGURES 43A-43D show an example of a “reciprocal”
REGISTER method;

25 FIGURES 44A-44C show an example of a “reciprocal”
AUDIT method;

30 FIGURES 45-48 show examples of several methods being
used together to control release of content or other information;

FIGURES 49, 49A-49F show an example OPEN method;

FIGURES 50, 50A-50F show an example of a READ
method;

5

FIGURES 51, 51A-51F show an example of a WRITE
method;

FIGURE 52 shows an example of a CLOSE method;

10

FIGURES 53A-53B show an example of an EVENT
method;

FIGURE 53C shows an example of a BILLING method;

15

FIGURE 54 shows an example of an ACCESS method;

FIGURES 55A-55B show examples of DECRYPT and
ENCRYPT methods;

20

FIGURE 56 shows an example of a CONTENT method;

FIGURES 57A and 57B show examples of EXTRACT and
EMBED methods;

FIGURE 58A shows an example of an OBSCURE method;

5

FIGURES 58B, 58C show examples of a FINGERPRINT
method;

FIGURE 59 shows an example of a DESTROY method;

10

FIGURE 60 shows an example of a PANIC method;

FIGURE 61 shows an example of a METER method;

15

FIGURE 62 shows an example of a key "convolution"
process;

20

FIGURE 63 shows an example of how different keys may
be generated using a key convolution process to determine a
"true" key;

FIGURES 64 and 65 show an example of how protected processing environment keys may be initialized;

FIGURES 66 and 67 show example processes for
5 decrypting information contained within stationary and traveling objects, respectively;

FIGURE 68 shows an example of how a protected processing environment may be initialized;
10

FIGURE 69 shows an example of how firmware may be downloaded into a protected processing environment;

FIGURE 70 shows an example of multiple VDE electronic
15 appliances connected together with a network or other communications means;

FIGURE 71 shows an example of a portable VDE electronic appliance;
20

FIGURES 72A-72D show examples of "pop-up" displays that may be generated by the user notification and exception interface;

5 FIGURE 73 shows an example of a "smart object";

FIGURE 74 shows an example of a process using "smart objects";

10 FIGURES 75A-75D show examples of data structures used for electronic negotiation;

FIGURES 75E-75F show example structures relating to an electronic agreement;

15

FIGURES 76A-76B show examples of electronic negotiation processes;

20 FIGURE 77 shows a further example of a chain of handling and control;

FIGURE 78 shows an example of a VDE "repository";

FIGURES 79-83 show an example illustrating a chain of handling and control to evolve and transform VDE managed content and control information;

5 FIGURE 84 shows a further example of a chain of handling and control involving several categories of VDE participants;

FIGURE 85 shows a further example of a chain of distribution and handling within an organization;

10

Figures 86 and 86A show a further example of a chain of handling and control; and

15

Figure 87 shows an example of a virtual silicon container model.

MORE DETAILED DESCRIPTION

Figures 1-7 and the discussion below provides an overview of some aspects of features provided by this invention. Following
5 this overview is a more technical "detail description" of example embodiments in accordance with the invention.

Overview

10 Figure 1 shows a "Virtual Distribution Environment" ("VDE") 100 that may be provided in accordance with this invention. In Figure 1, an information utility 200 connects to communications means 202 such as telephone or cable TV lines for example. Telephone or cable TV lines 202 may be part of an
15 "electronic highway" that carries electronic information from place to place. Lines 202 connect information utility 200 to other people

such as for example a consumer 208, an office 210, a video production studio 204, and a publishing house 214. Each of the people connected to information utility 200 may be called a "VDE participant" because they can participate in transactions occurring within the virtual distribution environment 100.

Almost any sort of transaction you can think of can be supported by virtual distribution environment 100. A few of many examples of transactions that can be supported by virtual distribution environment 100 include:

- C home banking and electronic payments;
- C electronic legal contracts;
- C distribution of "content" such as electronic printed matter, video, audio, images and computer programs; and
- 15 C secure communication of private information such as medical records and financial information.

Virtual distribution environment 100 is "virtual" because it does not require many of the physical "things" that used to be necessary to protect rights, ensure reliable and predictable distribution, and ensure proper compensation to content creators and distributors. For example, in the past, information was

distributed on records or disks that were difficult to copy. In the past, private or secret content was distributed in sealed envelopes or locked briefcases delivered by courier. To ensure appropriate compensation, consumers received goods and services only after they handed cash over to a seller. Although information utility 200 may deliver information by transferring physical "things" such as electronic storage media, the virtual distribution environment 100 facilitates a completely electronic "chain of handling and control."

VDE Flexibility Supports Transactions

Information utility 200 flexibly supports many different kinds of information transactions. Different VDE participants may define and/or participate in different parts of a transaction. Information utility 200 may assist with delivering information about a transaction, or it may be one of the transaction participants.

For example, the video production studio 204 in the upper right-hand corner of Figure 1 may create video/television programs. Video production studio 204 may send these programs over lines 202, or may use other paths such as satellite

link 205 and CD ROM delivery service 216. Video production studio 204 can send the programs directly to consumers 206, 208, 210, or it can send the programs to information utility 200 which may store and later send them to the consumers, for example.

5 Consumers 206, 208, 210 are each capable of receiving and using the programs created by video production studio 204—assuming, that is, that the video production studio or information utility 200 has arranged for these consumers to have appropriate “rules and controls” (control information) that give the consumers rights to
10 use the programs.

Even if a consumer has a copy of a video program, she cannot watch or copy the program unless she has “rules and controls” that authorize use of the program. She can use the
15 program only as permitted by the “rules and controls.”

For example, video production studio 204 might release a half-hour exercise video in the hope that as many viewers as possible will view it. The video production studio 204 wishes to
20 receive \$2.00 per viewing. Video production studio 204 may, through information utility 200, make the exercise video available in “protected” form to all consumers 206, 208, 210.

Video production studio 204 may also provide "rules and controls" for the video. These "rules and controls" may specify for example:

(1) any consumer who has good credit of at least \$2.00

5 based on a credit account with independent financial provider 212 (such as Mastercard or VISA) may watch the video,

(2) virtual distribution environment 100 will "meter" each
10 time a consumer watches the video, and report usage to video production studio 204 from time to time, and

(3) financial provider 212 may electronically collect
payment (\$2.00) from the credit account of each consumer
15 who watches the video, and transfer these payments to the video production studio 204.

Information utility 200 allows even a small video
production studio to market videos to consumers and receive
20 compensation for its efforts. Moreover, the videos can, with appropriate payment to the video production studio, be made

available to other video publishers who may add value and/or act as repackagers or redistributors.

Figure 1 also shows a publishing house 214. Publishing house 214 may act as a distributor for an author 206. The publishing house 214 may distribute rights to use "content" (such as computer software, electronic newspapers, the video produced by publishing house 214, audio, or any other data) to consumers such as office 210. The use rights may be defined by "rules and controls" distributed by publishing house 216. Publishing house 216 may distribute these "rules and controls" with the content, but this is not necessary. Because the content can be used only by consumers that have the appropriate "rules and controls," content and its associated "rules and controls" may be distributed at different times, in different ways, by different VDE participants. The ability of VDE to securely distribute and enforce "rules and controls" separately from the content they apply to provides great advantages.

Use rights distributed by publishing house 214 may, for example, permit office 210 to make and distribute copies of the content to its employees. Office 210 may act as a redistributor by

extending a "chain of handling and control" to its employees. The office 210 may add or modify "rules and controls" (consistent with the "rules and controls" it receives from publishing house 214) to provide office-internal control information and mechanisms. For
5 example, office 210 may set a maximum usage budget for each individual user and/or group within the office, or it may permit only specified employees and/or groups to access certain information.

10 Figure 1 also shows an information delivery service 216 delivering electronic storage media such as "CD ROM" disks to consumers 206. Even though the electronic storage media themselves are not delivered electronically by information utility
200 over lines 202, they are still part of the virtual distribution
15 environment 100. The electronic storage media may be used to distribute content, "rules and controls," or other information.

Example of What's Inside Information Utility 200

"Information utility" 200 in Figure 1 can be a collection of
20 participants that may act as distributors, financial clearinghouses, and administrators. Figure 1A shows an example of what may be inside one example of information utility

200. Information utility participants 200a-200g could each be an independent organization/business. There can be any number of each of participants 200a-200g. In this example, electronic “switch” 200a connects internal parts of information utility 200 to each other and to outside participants, and may also connect outside participants to one another.

Information utility 200 may include a “transaction processor” 200b that processes transactions (to transfer electronic funds, for example) based on requests from participants and/or report receiver 200e. It may also include a “usage analyst” 200c that analyzes reported usage information. A “report creator” 200d may create reports based on usage for example, and may provide these reports to outside participants and/or to participants within information utility 200. A “report receiver” 200e may receive reports such as usage reports from content users. A “permissioning agent” 200f may distribute “rules and controls” granting usage or distribution permissions based on a profile of a consumer’s credit worthiness, for example. An administrator 200h may provide information that keeps the virtual distribution environment 100 operating properly. A

content and message storage 200g may store information for use
by participants within or outside of information utility 200.

**Example of Distributing Content" Using A Chain of Handling
and Control"**

5

As explained above, virtual distribution environment 100
can be used to manage almost any sort of transaction. One type
of important transaction that virtual distribution environment
100 may be used to manage is the distribution or communication
10 of "content" or other important information. Figure 2 more
abstractly shows a "model" of how the Figure 1 virtual
distribution environment 100 may be used to provide a "chain of
handling and control" for distributing content. Each of the blocks
15 in Figure 2 may correspond to one or more of the VDE
participants shown in Figure 1.

In the Figure 2 example, a VDE content creator 102
creates "content." The content creator 102 may also specify
20 "rules and controls" for distributing the content. These
distribution-related "rules and controls" can specify who has
permission to distribute the rights to use content, and how many
users are allowed to use the content.

Arrow 104 shows the content creator 102 sending the "rules and controls" associated with the content to a VDE rights distributor 106 ("distributor") over an electronic highway 108 (or by some other path such as an optical disk sent by a delivery service such as U. S. mail). The content can be distributed over the same or different path used to send the "rules and controls." The distributor 106 generates her own "rules and controls" that relate to usage of the content. The usage-related "rules and controls" may, for example, specify what a user can and can't do with the content and how much it costs to use the content. These usage-related "rules and controls" must be consistent with the "rules and controls" specified by content creator 102.

Arrow 110 shows the distributor 106 distributing rights to use the content by sending the content's "rules and controls" to a content user 112 such as a consumer. The content user 112 uses the content in accordance with the usage-related "rules and controls."

In this Figure 2 example, information relating to content use is, as shown by arrow 114, reported to a financial clearinghouse 116. Based on this "reporting," the financial

clearinghouse 116 may generate a bill and send it to the content user 112 over a "reports and payments" network 118. Arrow 120 shows the content user 112 providing payments for content usage to the financial clearinghouse 116. Based on the reports and payments it receives, the financial clearinghouse 116 may provide reports and/or payments to the distributor 106. The distributor 106 may, as shown by arrow 122, provide reports and/or payments to the content creator 102. The clearinghouse 116 may provide reports and payments directly to the creator 102. Reporting and/or payments may be done differently. For example, clearinghouse 116 may directly or through an agent, provide reports and/or payments to each of VDE content creators 102, and rights distributor 106, as well as reports to content user 112.

15

The distributor 106 and the content creator 102 may be the same person, or they may be different people. For example, a musical performing group may act as both content creator 102 and distributor 106 by creating and distributing its own musical recordings. As another example, a publishing house may act as a distributor 106 to distribute rights to use works created by an author content creator 102. Content creators 102 may use a

20

distributor 106 to efficiently manage the financial end of content distribution.

The "financial clearinghouse" 116 shown in Figure 2 may also be a "VDE administrator." Financial clearinghouse 116 in its VDE administrator role sends "administrative" information to the VDE participants. This administrative information helps to keep the virtual distribution environment 100 operating properly. The "VDE administrator" and financial clearinghouse roles may be performed by different people or companies, and there can be more than one of each.

More about Rules and Controls

The virtual distribution environment 100 prevents use of protected information except as permitted by the "rules and controls" (control information). For example, the "rules and controls" shown in Figure 2 may grant specific individuals or classes of content users 112 "permission" to use certain content. They may specify what kinds of content usage are permitted, and what kinds are not. They may specify how content usage is to be paid for and how much it costs. As another example, "rules and

controls" may require content usage information to be reported back to the distributor 106 and/or content creator 102.

- 5 Every VDE participant in "chain of handling and control" is normally subject to "rules and controls." "Rules and controls" define the respective rights and obligations of each of the various VDE participants. "Rules and controls" provide information and mechanisms that may establish interdependencies and relationships between the participants. "Rules and controls" are flexible, and permit "virtual distribution environment" 100 to support most "traditional" business transactions. For example:
- 10 C "Rules and controls" may specify which financial clearinghouse(s) 116 may process payments,
- 15 C "Rules and controls" may specify which participant(s) receive what kind of usage report, and
- C "Rules and controls" may specify that certain information is revealed to certain participants, and that other information is kept secret from them.
- 20 "Rules and controls" may self limit if and how they may be changed. Often, "rules and controls" specified by one VDE participant cannot be changed by another VDE participant. For

example, a content user 112 generally can't change "rules and controls" specified by a distributor 106 that require the user to pay for content usage at a certain rate. "Rules and controls" may "persist" as they pass through a "chain of handling and control,"
5 and may be "inherited" as they are passed down from one VDE participant to the next.

Depending upon their needs, VDE participants can specify that their "rules and controls" can be changed under conditions
10 specified by the same or other "rules and controls." For example, "rules and controls" specified by the content creator 102 may permit the distributor 106 to "mark up" the usage price just as retail stores "mark up" the wholesale price of goods. Figure 2A shows an example in which certain "rules and controls" persist
15 unchanged from content creator 102 to content user 112; other "rules and controls" are modified or deleted by distributor 106; and still other "rules and controls" are added by the distributor.

"Rules and controls" can be used to protect the content
20 user's privacy by limiting the information that is reported to other VDE participants. As one example, "rules and controls" can cause content usage information to be reported anonymously

without revealing content user identity, or it can reveal only certain information to certain participants (for example, information derived from usage) with appropriate permission, if required. This ability to securely control what information is revealed and what VDE participant(s) it is revealed to allows the privacy rights of all VDE participants to be protected.

Rules and Contents" Can Be Separately Delivered

As mentioned above, virtual distribution environment 100 "associates" content with corresponding "rules and controls," and prevents the content from being used or accessed unless a set of corresponding "rules and controls" is available. The distributor 106 doesn't need to deliver content to control the content's distribution. The preferred embodiment can securely protect content by protecting corresponding, usage enabling "rules and controls" against unauthorized distribution and use.

In some examples, "rules and controls" may travel with the content they apply to. Virtual distribution environment 100 also allows "rules and controls" to be delivered separately from content. Since no one can use or access protected content without "permission" from corresponding "rules and controls," the

distributor 106 can control use of content that has already been (or will in the future be) delivered. "Rules and controls" may be delivered over a path different from the one used for content delivery. "Rules and controls" may also be delivered at some other time. The content creator 102 might deliver content to content user 112 over the electronic highway 108, or could make the content available to anyone on the highway. Content may be used at the time it is delivered, or it may be stored for later use or reuse.

The virtual distribution environment 100 also allows payment and reporting means to be delivered separately. For example, the content user 112 may have a virtual "credit card" that extends credit (up to a certain limit) to pay for usage of any content. A "credit transaction" can take place at the user's site without requiring any "online" connection or further authorization. This invention can be used to help securely protect the virtual "credit card" against unauthorized use.

Rules and Contents" Define Processes

Figure 3 shows an example of an overall process based on "rules and controls." It includes an "events" process 402, a meter

process 404, a billing process 406, and a budget process 408. Not all of the processes shown in Figure 3 will be used for every set of "rules and controls."

5 The "events process" 402 detects things that happen ("events") and determines which of those "events" need action by the other "processes." The "events" may include, for example, a request to use content or generate a usage permission. Some events may need additional processing, and others may not.

10 Whether an "event" needs more processing depends on the "rules and controls" corresponding to the content. For example, a user who lacks permission will not have her request satisfied ("No Go"). As another example, each user request to turn to a new page of an electronic book may be satisfied ("Go"), but it may not

15 be necessary to meter, bill or budget those requests. A user who has purchased a copy of a novel may be permitted to open and read the novel as many times as she wants to without any further metering, billing or budgeting. In this simple example, the "event process" 402 may request metering, billing and/or

20 budgeting processes the first time the user asks to open the protected novel (so the purchase price can be charged to the user), and treat all later requests to open the same novel as

“insignificant events.” Other content (for example, searching an electronic telephone directory) may require the user to pay a fee for each access.

5 “Meter” process 404 keeps track of events, and may report usage to distributor 106 and/or other appropriate VDE participant(s). Figure 4 shows that process 404 can be based on a number of different factors such as:

- 10 (a) type of usage to charge for,
- (b) what kind of unit to base charges on,
- (c) how much to charge per unit,
- (d) when to report, and
- (e) how to pay.

15 These factors may be specified by the “rules and controls” that control the meter process.

Billing process 406 determines how much to charge for events. It records and reports payment information.

20 Budget process 408 limits how much content usage is permitted. For example, budget process 408 may limit the number of times content may be accessed or copied, or it may

limit the number of pages or other amount of content that can be used based on, for example, the number of dollars available in a credit account. Budget process 408 records and reports financial and other transaction information associated with such limits.

5

Content may be supplied to the user once these processes have been successfully performed.

Containers and Objects"

10

Figure 5A shows how the virtual distribution environment 100, in a preferred embodiment, may package information elements (content) into a "container" 302 so the information can't be accessed except as provided by its "rules and controls."

Normally, the container 302 is electronic rather than physical.

15

Electronic container 302 in one example comprises "digital" information having a well defined structure. Container 302 and its contents can be called an "object 300."

20

The Figure 5A example shows items "within" and enclosed by container 302. However, container 302 may "contain" items without those items actually being stored within the container. For example, the container 302 may reference items that are

available elsewhere such as in other containers at remote sites.

Container 302 may reference items available at different times or only during limited times. Some items may be too large to store within container 302. Items may, for example, be delivered to the user in the form of a "live feed" of video at a certain time. Even then, the container 302 "contains" the live feed (by reference) in this example.

Container 302 may contain information content 304 in electronic (such as "digital") form. Information content 304 could be the text of a novel, a picture, sound such as a musical performance or a reading, a movie or other video, computer software, or just about any other kind of electronic information you can think of. Other types of "objects" 300 (such as "administrative objects") may contain "administrative" or other information instead of or in addition to information content 304.

In the Figure 5A example, container 302 may also contain "rules and controls" in the form of:

- (a) a "permissions record" 808;
- (b) "budgets" 308; and
- (c) "other methods" 1000.

Figure 5B gives some additional detail about permissions record 808, budgets 308 and other methods 1000. The "permissions record" 808 specifies the rights associated with the object 300 such as, for example, who can open the container 302, who can use the object's contents, who can distribute the object, and what other control mechanisms must be active. For example, permissions record 808 may specify a user's rights to use, distribute and/or administer the container 302 and its content. Permissions record 808 may also specify requirements to be applied by the budgets 308 and "other methods" 1000. Permissions record 808 may also contain security related information such as scrambling and descrambling "keys."

"Budgets" 308 shown in Figure 5B are a special type of "method" 1000 that may specify, among other things, limitations on usage of information content 304, and how usage will be paid for. Budgets 308 can specify, for example, how much of the total information content 304 can be used and/or copied. The methods 310 may prevent use of more than the amount specified by a specific budget.

“Other methods” 1000 define basic operations used by “rules and controls.” Such “methods” 1000 may include, for example, how usage is to be “metered,” if and how content 304 and other information is to be scrambled and descrambled, and other processes associated with handling and controlling information content 304. For example, methods 1000 may record the identity of anyone who opens the electronic container 302, and can also control how information content is to be charged based on “metering.” Methods 1000 may apply to one or several different information contents 304 and associated containers 302, as well as to all or specific portions of information content 304.

Secure Processing Unit (SPU)

The “VDE participants” may each have an “electronic appliance.” The appliance may be or contain a computer. The appliances may communicate over the electronic highway 108. Figure 6 shows a secure processing unit (“SPU”) 500 portion of the “electronic appliance” used in this example by each VDE participant. SPU 500 processes information in a secure processing environment 503, and stores important information securely. SPU 500 may be emulated by software operating in a host electronic appliance.

SPU 500 is enclosed within and protected by a "tamper resistant security barrier" 502. Security barrier 502 separates the secure environment 503 from the rest of the world. It prevents information and processes within the secure environment 503 from being observed, interfered with and leaving except under appropriate secure conditions. Barrier 502 also controls external access to secure resources, processes and information within SPU 500. In one example, tamper resistant security barrier 502 is formed by security features such as "encryption," and hardware that detects tampering and/or destroys sensitive information within secure environment 503 when tampering is detected.

SPU 500 in this example is an integrated circuit ("IC") "chip" 504 including "hardware" 506 and "firmware" 508. SPU 500 connects to the rest of the electronic appliance through an "appliance link" 510. SPU "firmware" 508 in this example is "software" such as a "computer program(s)" "embedded" within chip 504. Firmware 508 makes the hardware 506 work. Hardware 506 preferably contains a processor to perform instructions specified by firmware 508. "Hardware" 506 also contains long-term and short-term memories to store information

securely so it can't be tampered with. SPU 500 may also have a protected clock/calendar used for timing events. The SPU hardware 506 in this example may include special purpose electronic circuits that are specially designed to perform certain processes (such as "encryption" and "decryption") rapidly and efficiently.

The particular context in which SPU 500 is being used will determine how much processing capabilities SPU 500 should have. SPU hardware 506, in this example, provides at least enough processing capabilities to support the secure parts of processes shown in Figure 3. In some contexts, the functions of SPU 500 may be increased so the SPU can perform all the electronic appliance processing, and can be incorporated into a general purpose processor. In other contexts, SPU 500 may work alongside a general purpose processor, and therefore only needs to have enough processing capabilities to handle secure processes.

VDE Electronic Appliance and Rights Operating System"

Figure 7 shows an example of an electronic appliance 600 including SPU 500. Electronic appliance 600 may be practically any kind of electrical or electronic device, such as:

5

- C a computer
- C a T.V. "set top" control box
- C a pager
- C a telephone
- 10 C a sound system
- C a video reproduction system
- C a video game player
- C a "smart" credit card

15 Electronic appliance 600 in this example may include a keyboard or keypad 612, a voice recognizer 613, and a display 614. A human user can input commands through keyboard 612 and/or voice recognizer 613, and may view information on display 614. Appliance 600 may communicate with the outside world through
20 any of the connections/devices normally used within an electronic appliance. The connections/devices shown along the bottom of the drawing are examples:

a "modem" 618 or other telecommunications link;
a CD ROM disk 620 or other storage medium or device;
a printer 622;
broadcast reception 624;
5 a document scanner 626; and
a "cable" 628 connecting the appliance with a "network."

Virtual distribution environment 100 provides a "rights
operating system" 602 that manages appliance 600 and SPU 500
10 by controlling their hardware resources. The operating system
602 may also support at least one "application" 608. Generally,
"application" 608 is hardware and/or software specific to the
context of appliance 600. For example, if appliance 600 is a
personal computer, then "application" 608 could be a program
15 loaded by the user, for instance, a word processor, a
communications system or a sound recorder. If appliance 600 is a
television controller box, then application 608 might be hardware
or software that allows a user to order videos on demand and
perform other functions such as fast forward and rewind. In this
20 example, operating system 602 provides a standardized, well
defined, generalized "interface" that could support and work
with many different "applications" 608.

Operating system 602 in this example provides “rights and auditing operating system functions” 604 and “other operating system functions” 606. The “rights and auditing operating system functions” 604 securely handle tasks that relate to virtual distribution environment 100. SPU 500 provides or supports many of the security functions of the “rights and auditing operating system functions” 402. The “other operating system functions” 606 handle general appliance functions. Overall operating system 602 may be designed from the beginning to include the “rights and auditing operating system functions” 604 plus the “other operating system functions” 606, or the “rights and auditing operating system functions” may be an add-on to a preexisting operating system providing the “other operating system functions.”

“Rights operating system” 602 in this example can work with many different types of appliances 600. For example, it can work with large mainframe computers, “minicomputers” and “microcomputers” such as personal computers and portable computing devices. It can also work in control boxes on the top of television sets, small portable “pagers,” desktop radios, stereo sound systems, telephones, telephone switches, or any other

electronic appliance. This ability to work on big appliances as well as little appliances is called "scalable." A "scalable" operating system 602 means that there can be a standardized interface across many different appliances performing a wide
5 variety of tasks.

The "rights operating system functions" 604 are "services-based" in this example. For example, "rights operating system functions" 604 handle summary requests from application 608
10 rather than requiring the application to always make more detailed "subrequests" or otherwise get involved with the underlying complexities involved in satisfying a summary request. For example, application 608 may simply ask to read specified information; "rights operating system functions" 604
15 can then decide whether the desired information is VDE-protected content and, if it is, perform processes needed to make the information available. This feature is called "transparency." "Transparency" makes tasks easy for the application 608. "Rights operating system functions" 604 can support applications
20 608 that "know" nothing about virtual distribution environment 100. Applications 608 that are "aware" of virtual distribution

environment 100 may be able to make more detailed use of virtual distribution environment 100.

5 In this example, "rights operating system functions" 604 are "event driven". Rather than repeatedly examining the state of electronic appliance 600 to determine whether a condition has arisen, the "rights operating system functions" 604 may respond directly to "events" or "happenings" within appliance 600.

10 In this example, some of the services performed by "rights operating system functions" 604 may be extended based on additional "components" delivered to operating system 602. "Rights operating system functions" 604 can collect together and use "components" sent by different participants at different
15 times. The "components" help to make the operating system 602 "scalable." Some components can change how services work on little appliances versus how they work on big appliances (e.g., multi-user). Other components are designed to work with specific applications or classes of applications (e.g., some types of meters
20 and some types of budgets).

Electronic Appliance 600

An electronic appliance 600 provided by the preferred embodiment may, for example, be any electronic apparatus that contains one or more microprocessors and/or microcontrollers and/or other devices which perform logical and/or mathematical calculations. This may include computers; computer terminals; 5 device controllers for use with computers; peripheral devices for use with computers; digital display devices; televisions; video and audio/video projection systems; channel selectors and/or decoders for use with broadcast and/or cable transmissions; remote control devices; video and/or audio recorders; media players including 10 compact disc players, videodisc players and tape players; audio and/or video amplifiers; virtual reality machines; electronic game players; multimedia players; radios; telephones; videophones; facsimile machines; robots; numerically controlled machines including machine tools and the like; and other devices 15 containing one or more microcomputers and/or microcontrollers and/or other CPUs, including those not yet in existence.

Figure 8 shows an example of an electronic appliance 600. 20 This example of electronic appliance 600 includes a system bus 653. In this example, one or more conventional general purpose central processing units ("CPUs") 654 are connected to bus 653.

Bus 653 connects CPU(s) 654 to RAM 656, ROM 658, and I/O controller 660. One or more SPUs 500 may also be connected to system bus 653. System bus 653 may permit SPU(s) 500 to communicate with CPU(s) 654, and also may allow both the CPU(s) and the SPU(s) to communicate (e.g., over shared address and data lines) with RAM 656, ROM 658 and I/O controller 660. A power supply 659 may provide power to SPU 500, CPU 654 and the other system components shown.

In the example shown, I/O controller 660 is connected to secondary storage device 652, a keyboard/display 612,614, a communications controller 666, and a backup storage device 668. Backup storage device 668 may, for example, store information on mass media such as a tape 670, a floppy disk, a removable memory card, etc. Communications controller 666 may allow electronic appliance 600 to communicate with other electronic appliances via network 672 or other telecommunications links. Different electronic appliances 600 may interoperate even if they use different CPUs and different instances of ROS 602, so long as they typically use compatible communication protocols and/or security methods. In this example, I/O controller 660 permits CPU 654 and SPU 500 to read from and write to secondary

storage 662, keyboard/display 612, 614, communications controller 666, and backup storage device 668.

5 Secondary storage 662 may comprise the same one or more non-secure secondary storage devices (such as a magnetic disk and a CD-ROM drive as one example) that electronic appliance 600 uses for general secondary storage functions. In some implementations, part or all of secondary storage 652 may comprise a secondary storage device(s) that is physically enclosed
10 within a secure enclosure. However, since it may not be practical or cost-effective to physically secure secondary storage 652 in many implementations, secondary storage 652 may be used to store information in a secure manner by encrypting information before storing it in secondary storage 652. If information is
15 encrypted before it is stored, physical access to secondary storage 652 or its contents does not readily reveal or compromise the information.

20 Secondary storage 652 in this example stores code and data used by CPU 654 and/or SPU 500 to control the overall operation of electronic appliance 600. For example, Figure 8 shows that "Rights Operating System" ("ROS") 602 (including a

portion 604 of ROS that provides VDE functions and a portion
606 that provides other OS functions) shown in Figure 7 may be
stored on secondary storage 652. Secondary storage 652 may
also store one or more VDE objects 300. Figure 8 also shows that
5 the secure files 610 shown in Figure 7 may be stored on
secondary storage 652 in the form of a "secure database" or
management file system 610. This secure database 610 may
store and organize information used by ROS 602 to perform VDE
functions 604. Thus, the code that is executed to perform VDE
10 and other OS functions 604, 606, and secure files 610 (as well as
VDE objects 300) associated with those functions may be stored
in secondary storage 652. Secondary storage 652 may also store
"other information" 673 such as, for example, information used by
other operating system functions 606 for task management, non-
15 VDE files, etc. Portions of the elements indicated in secondary
storage 652 may also be stored in ROM 658, so long as those
elements do not require changes (except when ROM 658 is
replaced). Portions of ROS 602 in particular may desirably be
included in ROM 658 (e.g., "bootstrap" routines, POST routines,
20 etc. for use in establishing an operating environment for
electronic appliance 600 when power is applied).

Figure 8 shows that secondary storage 652 may also be used to store code ("application programs") providing user application(s) 608 shown in Figure 7. Figure 8 shows that there may be two general types of application programs 608: "VDE aware" applications 608a, and Non-VDE aware applications 608b. VDE aware applications 608a may have been at least in part designed specifically with VDE 100 in mind to access and take detailed advantage of VDE functions 604. Because of the "transparency" features of ROS 602, non-VDE aware applications 608b (e.g., applications not specifically designed for VDE 100) can also access and take advantage of VDE functions 604.

SECURE PROCESSING UNIT 500

Each VDE node or other electronic appliance 600 in the preferred embodiment may include one or more SPUs 500. SPUs 500 may be used to perform all secure processing for VDE 100. For example, SPU 500 is used for decrypting (or otherwise unsecuring) VDE protected objects 300. It is also used for managing encrypted and/or otherwise secured communication (such as by employing authentication and/or error-correction validation of information). SPU 500 may also perform secure data management processes including governing usage of,

auditing of, and where appropriate, payment for VDE objects 300
(through the use of prepayments, credits, real-time electronic
debits from bank accounts and/or VDE node currency token
deposit accounts). SPU 500 may perform other transactions
5 related to such VDE objects 300.

SPU Physical Packaging and Security Barrier 502

As shown Figure 6, in the preferred embodiment, an SPU
500 may be implemented as a single integrated circuit "chip" 505
10 to provide a secure processing environment in which confidential
and/or commercially valuable information can be safely
processed, encrypted and/or decrypted. IC chip 505 may, for
example, comprise a small semiconductor "die" about the size of a
thumbnail. This semiconductor die may include semiconductor
15 and metal conductive pathways. These pathways define the
circuitry, and thus the functionality, of SPU 500. Some of these
pathways are electrically connected to the external "pins" 504 of
the chip 505.

20 As shown in Figures 6 and 9, SPU 500 may be surrounded
by a tamper-resistant hardware security barrier 502. Part of this
security barrier 502 is formed by a plastic or other package in

which an SPU "die" is encased. Because the processing occurring within, and information stored by, SPU 500 are not easily accessible to the outside world, they are relatively secure from unauthorized access and tampering. All signals cross barrier 502 through a secure, controlled path provided by BIU 530 that restricts the outside world's access to the internal components within SPU 500. This secure, controlled path resists attempts from the outside world to access secret information and resources within SPU 500.

It is possible to remove the plastic package of an IC chip and gain access to the "die." It is also possible to analyze and "reverse engineer" the "die" itself (e.g., using various types of logic analyzers and microprobes to collect and analyze signals on the die while the circuitry is operating, using acid etching or other techniques to remove semiconductor layers to expose other layers, viewing and photographing the die using an electron microscope, etc.) Although no system or circuit is absolutely impervious to such attacks, SPU barrier 502 may include additional hardware protections that make successful attacks exceedingly costly and time consuming. For example, ion implantation and/or other fabrication techniques may be used to

make it very difficult to visually discern SPU die conductive pathways, and SPU internal circuitry may be fabricated in such a way that it "self-destructs" when exposed to air and/or light. SPU 500 may store secret information in internal memory that loses its contents when power is lost. Circuitry may be incorporated within SPU 500 that detects microprobing or other tampering, and self-destructs (or destroys other parts of the SPU) when tampering is detected. These and other hardware-based physical security techniques contribute to tamper-resistant hardware security barrier 502.

To increase the security of security barrier 502 even further, it is possible to encase or include SPU 500 in one or more further physical enclosures such as, for example: epoxy or other "potting compound"; further module enclosures including additional self-destruct, self-disabling or other features activated when tampering is detected; further modules providing additional security protections such as requiring password or other authentication to operate; and the like. In addition, further layers of metal may be added to the die to complicate acid etching, micro probing, and the like; circuitry designed to "zeroize" memory may be included as an aspect of self-destruct

processes; the plastic package itself may be designed to resist chemical as well as physical "attacks"; and memories internal to SPU 500 may have specialized addressing and refresh circuitry that "shuffles" the location of bits to complicate efforts to electrically determine the value of memory locations. These and other techniques may contribute to the security of barrier 502.

In some electronic appliances 600, SPU 500 may be integrated together with the device microcontroller or equivalent or with a device I/O or communications microcontroller into a common chip (or chip set) 505. For example, in one preferred embodiment, SPU 500 may be integrated together with one or more other CPU(s) (e.g., a CPU 654 of an electronic appliance) in a single component or package. The other CPU(s) 654 may be any centrally controlling logic arrangement, such as for example, a microprocessor, other microcontroller, and/or array or other parallel processor. This integrated configuration may result in lower overall cost, smaller overall size, and potentially faster interaction between an SPU 500 and a CPU 654. Integration may also provide wider distribution if an integrated SPU/CPU component is a standard feature of a widely distributed microprocessor line. Merging an SPU 500 into a main CPU 654

of an electronic appliance 600 (or into another appliance or
appliance peripheral microcomputer or other microcontroller)
may substantially reduce the overhead cost of implementing VDE
100. Integration considerations may include cost of
5 implementation, cost of manufacture, desired degree of security,
and value of compactness.

SPU 500 may also be integrated with devices other than
CPUs. For example, for video and multimedia applications, some
10 performance and/or security advantages (depending on overall
design) could result from integrating an SPU 500 into a video
controller chip or chipset. SPU 500 can also be integrated
directly into a network communications chip or chipset or the
like. Certain performance advantages in high speed
15 communications applications may also result from integrating an
SPU 500 with a modem chip or chipset. This may facilitate
incorporation of an SPU 500 into communication appliances such
as stand-alone fax machines. SPU 500 may also be integrated
into other peripheral devices, such as CD-ROM devices, set-top
20 cable devices, game devices, and a wide variety of other electronic
appliances that use, allow access to, perform transactions related
to, or consume, distributed information.

SPU 500 Internal Architecture

Figure 9 is a detailed diagram of the internal structure within an example of SPU 500. SPU 500 in this example includes a single microprocessor 520 and a limited amount of memory configured as ROM 532 and RAM 534. In more detail, this example of SPU 500 includes microprocessor 520, an encrypt/decrypt engine 522, a DMA controller 526, a real-time clock 528, a bus interface unit ("BIU") 530, a read only memory (ROM) 532, a random access memory (RAM) 534, and a memory management unit ("MMU") 540. DMA controller 526 and MMU 540 are optional, but the performance of SPU 500 may suffer if they are not present. SPU 500 may also include an optional pattern matching engine 524, an optional random number generator 542, an optional arithmetic accelerator circuit 544, and optional compression/decompression circuit 546. A shared address/data bus arrangement 536 may transfer information between these various components under control of microprocessor 520 and/or DMA controller 526. Additional or alternate dedicated paths 538 may connect microprocessor 520 to the other components (e.g., encrypt/decrypt engine 522 via line 538a, real-time clock 528 via line 538b, bus interface unit 530 via

line 538c, DMA controller via line 538d, and memory management unit (MMU) 540 via line 538e).

The following section discusses each of these SPU components in more detail.

Microprocessor 520

Microprocessor 520 is the "brain" of SPU 500. In this example, it executes a sequence of steps specified by code stored (at least temporarily) within ROM 532 and/or RAM 534.

Microprocessor 520 in the preferred embodiment comprises a dedicated central processing arrangement (e.g., a RISC and/or CISC processor unit, a microcontroller, and/or other central processing means or, less desirably in most applications, process specific dedicated control logic) for executing instructions stored in the ROM 532 and/or other memory. Microprocessor 520 may be separate elements of a circuitry layout, or may be separate packages within a secure SPU 500.

In the preferred embodiment, microprocessor 520 normally handles the most security sensitive aspects of the operation of electronic appliance 600. For example, microprocessor 520 may

manage VDE decrypting, encrypting, certain content and/or appliance usage control information, keeping track of usage of VDE secured content, and other VDE usage control related functions.

5

Stored in each SPU 500 and/or electronic appliance secondary memory 652 may be, for example, an instance of ROS 602 software, application programs 608, objects 300 containing VDE controlled property content and related information, and management database 610 that stores both information associated with objects and VDE control information. ROS 602 includes software intended for execution by SPU microprocessor 520 for, in part, controlling usage of VDE related objects 300 by electronic appliance 600. As will be explained, these SPU programs include "load modules" for performing basic control functions. These various programs and associated data are executed and manipulated primarily by microprocessor 520.

10

15

Real Time Clock (RTC) 528

20

In the preferred embodiment, SPU 500 includes a real time clock circuit ("RTC") 528 that serves as a reliable, tamper resistant time base for the SPU. RTC 528 keeps track of time of

day and date (e.g., month, day and year) in the preferred embodiment, and thus may comprise a combination calendar and clock. A reliable time base is important for implementing time based usage metering methods, "time aged decryption keys," and other time based SPU functions.

The RTC 528 must receive power in order to operate. Optimally, the RTC 528 power source could comprise a small battery located within SPU 500 or other secure enclosure. However, the RTC 528 may employ a power source such as an externally located battery that is external to the SPU 500. Such an externally located battery may provide relatively uninterrupted power to RTC 528, and may also maintain as non-volatile at least a portion of the otherwise volatile RAM 534 within SPU 500.

In one implementation, electronic appliance power supply 659 is also used to power SPU 500. Using any external power supply as the only power source for RTC 528 may significantly reduce the usefulness of time based security techniques unless, at minimum, SPU 500 recognizes any interruption (or any material interruption) of the supply of external power, records such

interruption, and responds as may be appropriate such as disabling the ability of the SPU 500 to perform certain or all VDE processes. Recognizing a power interruption may, for example, be accomplished by employing a circuit which is activated by power failure. The power failure sensing circuit may power another circuit that includes associated logic for recording one or more power fail events. Capacitor discharge circuitry may provide the necessary temporary power to operate this logic. In addition or alternatively, SPU 500 may from time to time compare an output of RTC 528 to a clock output of a host electronic appliance 600, if available. In the event a discrepancy is detected, SPU 500 may respond as appropriate, including recording the discrepancy and/or disabling at least some portion of processes performed by SPU 500 under at least some circumstances.

If a power failure and/or RTC 528 discrepancy and/or other event indicates the possibility of tampering, SPU 500 may automatically destroy, or render inaccessible without privileged intervention, one or more portions of sensitive information it stores, such as execution related information and/or encryption key related information. To provide further SPU operation, such

destroyed information would have to be replaced by a VDE clearinghouse, administrator and/or distributor, as may be appropriate. This may be achieved by remotely downloading update and/or replacement data and/or code. In the event of a
5 disabling and/or destruction of processes and/or information as described above, the electronic appliance 600 may require a secure VDE communication with an administrator, clearinghouse, and/or distributor as appropriate in order to reinitialize the RTC 528. Some or all secure SPU 500 processes
10 may not operate until then.

It may be desirable to provide a mechanism for setting and/or synchronizing RTC 528. In the preferred embodiment, when communication occurs between VDE electronic appliance 600 and another VDE appliance, an output of RTC 528 may be
15 compared to a controlled RTC 528 output time under control of the party authorized to be "senior" and controlling. In the event of a discrepancy, appropriate action may be taken, including resetting the RTC 528 of the "junior" controlled participant in the communication.

20

SPU Encrypt/Decrypt Engine 522

In the preferred embodiment, SPU encrypt/decrypt engine 522 provides special purpose hardware (e.g., a hardware state machine) for rapidly and efficiently encrypting and/or decrypting data. In some implementations, the encrypt/decrypt functions may be performed instead by microprocessor 520 under software control, but providing special purpose encrypt/decrypt hardware engine 522 will, in general, provide increased performance. Microprocessor 520 may, if desired, comprise a combination of processor circuitry and dedicated encryption/decryption logic that may be integrated together in the same circuitry layout so as to, for example, optimally share one or more circuit elements.

Generally, it is preferable that a computationally efficient but highly secure "bulk" encryption/decryption technique should be used to protect most of the data and objects handled by SPU 500. It is preferable that an extremely secure encryption/decryption technique be used as an aspect of authenticating the identity of electronic appliances 600 that are establishing a communication channel and securing any transferred permission, method, and administrative information. In the preferred embodiment, the encrypt/decrypt engine 522 includes both a symmetric key encryption/decryption circuit (e.g.

DES, Skipjack/Cipher, IDEA, RC-2, RC-4, etc.) and an antisymmetric (asymmetric) or Public Key ("PK") encryption/decryption circuit. The public/private key encryption/decryption circuit is used principally as an aspect of secure communications between an SPU 500 and VDE administrators, or other electronic appliances 600, that is between VDE secure subsystems. A symmetric encryption/decryption circuit may be used for "bulk" encrypting and decrypting most data stored in secondary storage 662 of electronic appliance 600 in which SPU 500 resides. The symmetric key encryption/decryption circuit may also be used for encrypting and decrypting content stored within VDE objects 300.

DES or public/private key methods may be used for all encryption functions. In alternate embodiments, encryption and decryption methods other than the DES and public/private key methods could be used for the various encryption related functions. For instance, other types of symmetric encryption/decryption techniques in which the same key is used for encryption and decryption could be used in place of DES encryption and decryption. The preferred embodiment can

support a plurality of decryption/encryption techniques using multiple dedicated circuits within encrypt/decrypt engine 522 and/or the processing arrangement within SPU 500.

5 **Pattern Matching Engine 524**

Optional pattern matching engine 524 may provide special purpose hardware for performing pattern matching functions.

One of the functions SPU 500 may perform is to validate/authenticate VDE objects 300 and other items.

10 Validation/authentication often involves comparing long data strings to determine whether they compare in a predetermined way. In addition, certain forms of usage (such as logical and/or physical (contiguous) relatedness of accessed elements) may require searching potentially long strings of data for certain bit
15 patterns or other significant pattern related metrics. Although pattern matching can be performed by SPU microprocessor 520 under software control, providing special purpose hardware pattern matching engine 524 may speed up the pattern matching process.

20

Compression/Decompression Engine 546

An optional compression/decompression engine 546 may be provided within an SPU 500 to, for example, compress and/or decompress content stored in, or released from, VDE objects 300. Compression/decompression engine 546 may implement one or
5 more compression algorithms using hardware circuitry to improve the performance of compression/decompression operations that would otherwise be performed by software operating on microprocessor 520, or outside SPU 500.

Decompression is important in the release of data such as video
10 and audio that is usually compressed before distribution and whose decompression speed is important. In some cases, information that is useful for usage monitoring purposes (such as record separators or other delimiters) is "hidden" under a compression layer that must be removed before this information
15 can be detected and used inside SPU 500.

Random Number Generator 542

Optional random number generator 542 may provide specialized hardware circuitry for generating random values (e.g.,
20 from inherently unpredictable physical processes such as quantum noise). Such random values are particularly useful for constructing encryption keys or unique identifiers, and for

initializing the generation of pseudo-random sequences. Random number generator 542 may produce values of any convenient length, including as small as a single bit per use. A random number of arbitrary size may be constructed by concatenating values produced by random number generator 542. A cryptographically strong pseudo-random sequence may be generated from a random key and seed generated with random number generator 542 and repeated encryption either with the encrypt/decrypt engine 522 or cryptographic algorithms in SPU 500. Such sequences may be used, for example, in private headers to frustrate efforts to determine an encryption key through cryptanalysis.

Arithmetic Accelerator 544

An optional arithmetic accelerator 544 may be provided within an SPU 500 in the form of hardware circuitry that can rapidly perform mathematical calculations such as multiplication and exponentiation involving large numbers. These calculations can, for example, be requested by microprocessor 520 or encrypt/decrypt engine 522, to assist in the computations required for certain asymmetric encryption/decryption operations. Such arithmetic accelerators are well-known to those

skilled in the art. In some implementations, a separate arithmetic accelerator 544 may be omitted and any necessary calculations may be performed by microprocessor 520 under software control.

5

DMA Controller 526

DMA controller 526 controls information transfers over address/data bus 536 without requiring microprocessor 520 to process each individual data transfer. Typically, microprocessor 520 may write to DMA controller 526 target and destination addresses and the number of bytes to transfer, and DMA controller 526 may then automatically transfer a block of data between components of SPU 500 (e.g., from ROM 532 to RAM 534, between encrypt/decrypt engine 522 and RAM 534, between bus interface unit 530 and RAM 534, etc.). DMA controller 526 may have multiple channels to handle multiple transfers simultaneously. In some implementations, a separate DMA controller 526 may be omitted, and any necessary data movements may be performed by microprocessor 520 under software control.

10

15

20

Bus Interface Unit (BIU) 530

Bus interface unit (BIU) 530 communicates information between SPU 500 and the outside world across the security barrier 502. BIU 530 shown in Figure 9 plus appropriate driver software may comprise the "appliance link" 510 shown in Figure 6. Bus interface unit 530 may be modelled after a USART or PCI bus interface in the preferred embodiment. In this example, BIU 530 connects SPU 500 to electronic appliance system bus 653 shown in Figure 8. BIU 530 is designed to prevent unauthorized access to internal components within SPU 500 and their contents. It does this by only allowing signals associated with an SPU 500 to be processed by control programs running on microprocessor 520 and not supporting direct access to the internal elements of an SPU 500.

Memory Management Unit 540

Memory Management Unit (MMU) 540, if present, provides hardware support for memory management and virtual memory management functions. It may also provide heightened security by enforcing hardware compartmentalization of the secure execution space (e.g., to prevent a less trusted task from modifying a more trusted task). More details are provided below

in connection with a discussion of the architecture of a Secure Processing Environment ("SPE") 503 supported by SPU 500.

MMU 540 may also provide hardware-level support
5 functions related to memory management such as, for example,
address mapping.

SPU Memory Architecture

In the preferred embodiment, SPU 500 uses three general
10 kinds of memory:

- (1) internal ROM 532;
- (2) internal RAM 534; and
- (3) external memory (typically RAM and/or disk supplied
by a host electronic appliance).

15

The internal ROM 532 and RAM 534 within SPU 500
provide a secure operating environment and execution space.
Because of cost limitations, chip fabrication size, complexity and
other limitations, it may not be possible to provide sufficient
20 memory within SPU 500 to store all information that an SPU
needs to process in a secure manner. Due to the practical limits
on the amount of ROM 532 and RAM 534 that may be included

within SPU 500, SPU 500 may store information in memory external to it, and move this information into and out of its secure internal memory space on an as needed basis. In these cases, secure processing steps performed by an SPU typically must be segmented into small, securely packaged elements that may be "paged in" and "paged out" of the limited available internal memory space. Memory external to an SPU 500 may not be secure. Since the external memory may not be secure, SPU 500 may encrypt and cryptographically seal code and other information before storing it in external memory. Similarly, SPU 500 must typically decrypt code and other information obtained from external memory in encrypted form before processing (e.g., executing) based on it. In the preferred embodiment, there are two general approaches used to address potential memory limitations in a SPU 500. In the first case, the small, securely packaged elements represent information contained in secure database 610. In the second case, such elements may represent protected (e.g., encrypted) virtual memory pages. Although virtual memory pages may correspond to information elements stored in secure database 610, this is not required in this example of a SPU memory architecture.

The following is a more detailed discussion of each of these three SPU memory resources.

SPU Internal ROM

5 SPU 500 read only memory (ROM) 532 or comparable purpose device provides secure internal non-volatile storage for certain programs and other information. For example, ROM 532 may store "kernel" programs such as SPU control firmware 508 and, if desired, encryption key information and certain
10 fundamental "load modules." The "kernel" programs, load module information, and encryption key information enable the control of certain basic functions of the SPU 500. Those components that are at least in part dependent on device configuration (e.g., POST, memory allocation, and a dispatcher)
15 may be loaded in ROM 532 along with additional load modules that have been determined to be required for specific installations or applications.

 In the preferred embodiment, ROM 532 may comprise a
20 combination of a masked ROM 532a and an EEPROM and/or equivalent "flash" memory 532b. EEPROM or flash memory 532b is used to store items that need to be updated and/or

initialized, such as for example, certain encryption keys. An additional benefit of providing EEPROM and/or flash memory 532b is the ability to optimize any load modules and library functions persistently stored within SPU 500 based on typical usage at a specific site. Although these items could also be stored in NVRAM 534b, EEPROM and/or flash memory 532b may be more cost effective.

Masked ROM 532a may cost less than flash and/or EEPROM 532b, and can be used to store permanent portions of SPU software/firmware. Such permanent portions may include, for example, code that interfaces to hardware elements such as the RTC 528, encryption/decryption engine 522, interrupt handlers, key generators, etc. Some of the operating system, library calls, libraries, and many of the core services provided by SPU 500 may also be in masked ROM 532a. In addition, some of the more commonly used executables are also good candidates for inclusion in masked ROM 532a. Items that need to be updated or that need to disappear when power is removed from SPU 500 should not be stored in masked ROM 532a.

Under some circumstances, RAM 534a and/or NVRAM 534b (NVRAM 534b may, for example, be constantly powered conventional RAM) may perform at least part of the role of ROM 532.

5

SPU Internal RAM

SPU 500 general purpose RAM 534 provides, among other things, secure execution space for secure processes. In the preferred embodiment, RAM 534 is comprised of different types of RAM such as a combination of high-speed RAM 534a and an NVRAM ("non-volatile RAM") 534b. RAM 534a may be volatile, while NVRAM 534b is preferably battery backed or otherwise arranged so as to be non-volatile (i.e., it does not lose its contents when power is turned off).

10
15

High-speed RAM 534a stores active code to be executed and associated data structures.

NVRAM 534b preferably contains certain keys and summary values that are preloaded as part of an initialization process in which SPU 500 communicates with a VDE administrator, and may also store changeable or changing

20

information associated with the operation of SPU 500. For security reasons, certain highly sensitive information (e.g., certain load modules and certain encryption key related information such as internally generated private keys) needs to be loaded into or generated internally by SPU 500 from time to time but, once loaded or generated internally, should never leave the SPU. In this preferred embodiment, the SPU 500 non-volatile random access memory (NVRAM) 534b may be used for securely storing such highly sensitive information. NVRAM 534b is also used by SPU 500 to store data that may change frequently but which preferably should not be lost in a power down or power fail mode.

NVRAM 534b is preferably a flash memory array, but may in addition or alternatively be electrically erasable programmable read only memory (EEPROM), static RAM (SRAM), bubble memory, three dimensional holographic or other electro-optical memory, or the like, or any other writable (e.g., randomly accessible) non-volatile memory of sufficient speed and cost-effectiveness.

SPU External Memory

The SPU 500 can store certain information on memory devices external to the SPU. If available, electronic appliance 600 memory can also be used to support any device external portions of SPU 500 software. Certain advantages may be gained by
5 allowing the SPU 500 to use external memory. As one example, memory internal to SPU 500 may be reduced in size by using non-volatile read/write memory in the host electronic appliance 600 such as a non-volatile portion of RAM 656 and/or ROM 658.

10 Such external memory may be used to store SPU programs, data and/or other information. For example, a VDE control program may be, at least in part, loaded into the memory and communicated to and decrypted within SPU 500 prior to execution. Such control programs may be re-encrypted and
15 communicated back to external memory where they may be stored for later execution by SPU 500. "Kernel" programs and/or some or all of the non-kernel "load modules" may be stored by SPU 500 in memory external to it. Since a secure database 610 may be relatively large, SPU 500 can store some or all of secure
20 database 610 in external memory and call portions into the SPU 500 as needed.

As mentioned above, memory external to SPU 500 may not be secure. Therefore, when security is required, SPU 500 must encrypt secure information before writing it to external memory, and decrypt secure information read from external memory before using it. Inasmuch as the encryption layer relies on secure processes and information (e.g., encryption algorithms and keys) present within SPU 500, the encryption layer effectively "extends" the SPU security barrier 502 to protect information the SPU 500 stores in memory external to it.

SPU 500 can use a wide variety of different types of external memory. For example, external memory may comprise electronic appliance secondary storage 652 such as a disk; external EEPROM or flash memory 658; and/or external RAM 656. External RAM 656 may comprise an external nonvolatile (e.g. constantly powered) RAM and/or cache RAM.

Using external RAM local to SPU 500 can significantly improve access times to information stored externally to an SPU.

For example, external RAM may be used:

C to buffer memory image pages and data structures prior to their storage in flash memory or on an external hard disk

(assuming transfer to flash or hard disk can occur in significant power or system failure cases);

C provide encryption and decryption buffers for data being released from VDE objects 300.

5 C to cache "swap blocks" and VDE data structures currently in use as an aspect of providing a secure virtual memory environment for SPU 500.

C to cache other information in order to, for example, reduce frequency of access by an SPU to secondary storage 652
10 and/or for other reasons.

Dual ported external RAM can be particularly effective in improving SPU 500 performance, since it can decrease the data movement overhead of the SPU bus interface unit 530 and SPU microprocessor 520.

15

Using external flash memory local to SPU 500 can be used to significantly improve access times to virtually all data structures. Since most available flash storage devices have limited write lifetimes, flash storage needs to take into account
20 the number of writes that will occur during the lifetime of the flash memory. Hence, flash storage of frequently written temporary items is not recommended. If external RAM is non-

volatile, then transfer to flash (or hard disk) may not be necessary.

External memory used by SPU 500 may include two
5 categories:

- C external memory dedicated to SPU 500, and
- C memory shared with electronic appliance 600.

For some VDE implementations, sharing memory (e.g.,
10 electronic appliance RAM 656, ROM 658 and/or secondary
storage 652) with CPU 654 or other elements of an electronic
appliance 600 may be the most cost effective way to store VDE
secure database management files 610 and information that
needs to be stored external to SPU 500. A host system hard disk
15 secondary memory 652 used for general purpose file storage can,
for example, also be used to store VDE management files 610.
SPU 500 may be given exclusive access to the external memory
(e.g., over a local bus high speed connection provided by BIU
530). Both dedicated and shared external memory may be
20 provided.

* * * * *

The hardware configuration of an example of electronic appliance 600 has been described above. The following section describes an example of the software architecture of electronic appliance 600 provided by the preferred embodiment, including the structure and operation of preferred embodiment "Rights Operating System" ("ROS") 602.

Rights Operating System 602

Rights Operating System ("ROS") 602 in the preferred embodiment is a compact, secure, event-driven, services-based, "component" oriented, distributed multiprocessing operating system environment that integrates VDE information security control information, components and protocols with traditional operating system concepts. Like traditional operating systems, ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment is a piece of software that manages hardware resources of a computer system and extends management functions to input and/or output devices, including communications devices. Also like traditional operating systems, preferred embodiment ROS 602 provides a coherent set of basic functions and abstraction layers for hiding the differences between, and many of the detailed complexities of, particular hardware implementations. In addition to these

characteristics found in many or most operating systems, ROS 602 provides secure VDE transaction management and other advantageous features not found in other operating systems. The following is a non-exhaustive list of some of the advantageous features provided by ROS 602 in the preferred embodiment:

Standardized interface provides coherent set of basic functions

- C simplifies programming
- C the same application can run on many different platforms

10 Event driven

- C eases functional decomposition
- C extendible
- C accommodates state transition and/or process oriented events

15 simplifies task management

- C simplifies inter-process communications

Services based

- C allows simplified and transparent scalability
- C simplifies multiprocessor support

20 hides machine dependencies

- C eases network management and support

Component Based Architecture

- C processing based on independently deliverable secure components
- C component model of processing control allows different sequential steps that are reconfigurable based on requirements
- 5 C components can be added, deleted or modified (subject to permissioning)
- C full control information over pre-defined and user-defined application events
- 10 C events can be individually controlled with independent executables

Secure

- C secure communications
- C secure control functions
- 15 C secure virtual memory management
- C information control structures protected from exposure
- C data elements are validated, correlated and access controlled
- C components are encrypted and validated independently
- 20 C components are tightly correlated to prevent unauthorized use of elements

- 5 C control structures and secured executables are validated
prior to use to protect against tampering
- C integrates security considerations at the I/O level
- C provides on-the-fly decryption of information at release
time
- C enables a secure commercial transaction network
- C flexible key management features

Scalaeble

- 10 C highly scalaeble across many different platforms
- C supports concurrent processing in a multiprocessor
environment
- C supports multiple cooperating processors
- C any number of host or security processors can be supported
- C control structures and kernel are easily portable to various
15 host platforms and to different processors within a target
platform without recompilation
- C supports remote processing
- C Remote Procedure Calls may be used for internal OS
communications

20 Highly Integratable

- C can be highly integrated with host platforms as an
additional operating system layer

- C permits non-secure storage of secured components and information using an OS layer "on top of" traditional OS platforms
- C can be seamlessly integrated with a host operating system to provide a common usage paradigm for transaction management and content access
- C integration may take many forms: operating system layers for desktops (e.g., DOS, Windows, Macintosh); device drivers and operating system interfaces for network services (e.g., Unix and Netware); and dedicated component drivers for "low end" set tops are a few of many examples
- C can be integrated in traditional and real time operating systems

Distributed

- C provides distribution of control information and reciprocal control information and mechanisms
- C supports conditional execution of controlled processes within any VDE node in a distributed, asynchronous arrangement
- C controlled delegation of rights in a distributed environment
- C supports chains of handling and control

- C management environment for distributed, occasionally connected but otherwise asynchronous networked database
- C real time and time independent data management
- C supports "agent" processes

5 Transparent

- C can be seamlessly integrated into existing operating systems
- C can support applications not specifically written to use it

Network friendly

- 10 C internal OS structures may use RPCs to distribute processing
- C subnets may seamlessly operate as a single node or independently

15 **General Background Regarding Operating Systems**

 An "operating system" provides a control mechanism for organizing computer system resources that allows programmers to create applications for computer systems more easily. An operating system does this by providing commonly used

20 functions, and by helping to ensure compatibility between different computer hardware and architectures (which may, for example, be manufactured by different vendors). Operating

systems also enable computer "peripheral device" manufacturers to far more easily supply compatible equipment to computer manufacturers and users.

5 Computer systems are usually made up of several different hardware components. These hardware components include, for example:

a central processing unit (CPU) for executing instructions;

10 an array of main memory cells (e.g., "RAM" or "ROM") for storing instructions for execution and data acted upon or parameterizing those instructions; and

15 one or more secondary storage devices (e.g., hard disk drive, floppy disk drive, CD-ROM drive, tape reader, card reader, or "flash" memory) organized to reflect named elements (a "file system") for storing images of main memory cells.

20 Most computer systems also include input/output devices such as keyboards, mice, video systems, printers, scanners and communications devices.

To organize the CPU's execution capabilities with available RAM, ROM and secondary storage devices, and to provide commonly used functions for use by programmers, a piece of software called an "operating system" is usually included with the other components. Typically, this piece of software is designed to begin executing after power is applied to the computer system and hardware diagnostics are completed. Thereafter, all use of the CPU, main memory and secondary memory devices is normally managed by this "operating system" software. Most computer operating systems also typically include a mechanism for extending their management functions to I/O and other peripheral devices, including commonly used functions associated with these devices.

By managing the CPU, memory and peripheral devices through the operating system, a coherent set of basic functions and abstraction layers for hiding hardware details allows programmers to more easily create sophisticated applications. In addition, managing the computer's hardware resources with an operating system allows many differences in design and equipment requirements between different manufacturers to be hidden. Furthermore, applications can be more easily shared

with other computer users who have the same operating system,
with significantly less work to support different manufacturers'
base hardware and peripheral devices.

5 **ROS 602 is an Operating System Providing Significant
Advantages**

ROS 602 is an "operating system." It manages the
resources of electronic appliance 600, and provides a commonly
used set of functions for programmers writing applications 608
10 for the electronic appliance. ROS 602 in the preferred
embodiment manages the hardware (e.g., CPU(s), memory(ies),
secure RTC(s), and encrypt/decrypt engines) within SPU 500.
ROS may also manage the hardware (e.g., CPU(s) and
memory(ies)) within one or more general purpose processors
15 within electronic appliance 600. ROS 602 also manages other
electronic appliance hardware resources, such as peripheral
devices attached to an electronic appliance. For example,
referring to Figure 7, ROS 602 may manage keyboard 612,
display 614, modem 618, disk drive 620, printer 622, scanner 624.
20 ROS 602 may also manage secure database 610 and a storage
device (e.g., "secondary storage" 652) used to store secure
database 610.

ROS 602 supports multiple processors. ROS 602 in the preferred embodiment supports any number of local and/or remote processors. Supported processors may include at least two types: one or more electronic appliance processors 654,
5 and/or one or more SPUs 500. A host processor CPU 654 may provide storage, database, and communications services. SPU 500 may provide cryptographic and secured process execution services. Diverse control and execution structures supported by ROS 602 may require that processing of control information occur
10 within a controllable execution space -- this controllable execution space may be provided by SPU 500. Additional host and/or SPU processors may increase efficiencies and/or capabilities. ROS 602 may access, coordinate and/or manage further processors remote to an electronic appliance 600 (e.g., via
15 network or other communications link) to provide additional processor resources and/or capabilities.

ROS 602 is services based. The ROS services provided using a host processor 654 and/or a secure processor (SPU 500)
20 are linked in the preferred embodiment using a "Remote Procedure Call" ("RPC") internal processing request structure. Cooperating processors may request interprocess services using a

RPC mechanism, which is minimally time dependent and can be distributed over cooperating processors on a network of hosts.

The multi-processor architecture provided by ROS 602 is easily extensible to support any number of host or security processors.

5 This extensibility supports high levels of scalability. Services also allow functions to be implemented differently on different equipment. For example, a small appliance that typically has low levels of usage by one user may implement a database service using very different techniques than a very large appliance with
10 high levels of usage by many users. This is another aspect of scalability.

ROS 602 provides a distributed processing environment.

For example, it permits information and control structures to
15 automatically, securely pass between sites as required to fulfill a user's requests. Communications between VDE nodes under the distributed processing features of ROS 602 may include interprocess service requests as discussed above. ROS 602 supports conditional and/or state dependent execution of
20 controlled processors within any VDE node. The location that the process executes and the control structures used may be

locally resident, remotely accessible, or carried along by the process to support execution on a remote system.

ROS 602 provides distribution of control information, including for example the distribution of control structures required to permit "agents" to operate in remote environments. Thus, ROS 602 provides facilities for passing execution and/or information control as part of emerging requirements for "agent" processes.

If desired, ROS 602 may independently distribute control information over very low bandwidth connections that may or may not be "real time" connections. ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment is "network friendly," and can be implemented with any level of networking protocol. Some examples include e-mail and direct connection at approximately "Layer 5" of the ISO model.

The ROS 602 distribution process (and the associated auditing of distributed information) is a controlled event that itself uses such control structures. This "reflective" distributed processing mechanism permits ROS 602 to securely distribute

rights and permissions in a controlled manner, and effectively restrict the characteristics of use of information content. The controlled delegation of rights in a distributed environment and the secure processing techniques used by ROS 602 to support this approach provide significant advantages.

Certain control mechanisms within ROS 602 are "reciprocal." Reciprocal control mechanisms place one or more control components at one or more locations that interact with one or more components at the same or other locations in a controlled way. For example, a usage control associated with object content at a user's location may have a reciprocal control at a distributor's location that governs distribution of the usage control, auditing of the usage control, and logic to process user requests associated with the usage control. A usage control at a user's location (in addition to controlling one or more aspects of usage) may prepare audits for a distributor and format requests associated with the usage control for processing by a distributor. Processes at either end of a reciprocal control may be further controlled by other processes (e.g., a distributor may be limited by a budget for the number of usage control mechanisms they may produce). Reciprocal control mechanisms may extend over many

sites and many levels (e.g., a creator to a distributor to a user) and may take any relationship into account (e.g., creator/distributor, distributor/user, user/user, user/creator, user/creator/distributor, etc.) Reciprocal control mechanisms
5 have many uses in VDE 100 in representing relationships and agreements in a distributed environment.

ROS 602 is scalable. Many portions of ROS 602 control structures and kernel(s) are easily portable to various host
10 platforms without recompilation. Any control structure may be distributed (or redistributed) if a granting authority permits this type of activity. The executable references within ROS 602 are portable within a target platform. Different instances of ROS 602 may execute the references using different resources. For
15 example, one instance of ROS 602 may perform a task using an SPU 500, while another instance of ROS 602 might perform the same task using a host processing environment running in protected memory that is emulating an SPU in software. ROS 602 control information is similarly portable; in many cases the
20 event processing structures may be passed between machines and host platforms as easily as between cooperative processors in a single computer. Appliances with different levels of usage

and/or resources available for ROS 602 functions may implement those functions in very different ways. Some services may be omitted entirely if insufficient resources exist. As described elsewhere, ROS 602 "knows" what services are available, and
5 how to proceed based on any given event. Not all events may be processable if resources are missing or inadequate.

ROS 602 is component based. Much of the functionality provided by ROS 602 in the preferred embodiment may be based
10 on "components" that can be securely, independently deliverable, replaceable and capable of being modified (e.g., under appropriately secure conditions and authorizations). Moreover, the "components" may themselves be made of independently deliverable elements. ROS 602 may assemble these elements
15 together (using a construct provided by the preferred embodiment called a "channel") at execution time. For example, a "load module" for execution by SPU 500 may reference one or more "method cores," method parameters and other associated data structures that ROS 602 may collect and assemble together
20 to perform a task such as billing or metering. Different users may have different combinations of elements, and some of the elements may be customizable by users with appropriate

authorization. This increases flexibility, allows elements to be reused, and has other advantages.

ROS 602 is highly secure. ROS 602 provides mechanisms
5 to protect information control structures from exposure by end
users and conduit hosts. ROS 602 can protect information, VDE
control structures and control executables using strong
encryption and validation mechanisms. These encryption and
validation mechanisms are designed to make them highly
10 resistant to undetected tampering. ROS 602 encrypts
information stored on secondary storage device(s) 652 to inhibit
tampering. ROS 602 also separately encrypts and validates its
various components. ROS 602 correlates control and data
structure components to prevent unauthorized use of elements.
15 These features permit ROS 602 to independently distribute
elements, and also allows integration of VDE functions 604 with
non-secure "other" OS functions 606.

ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment extends
20 conventional capabilities such as, for example, Access Control
List (ACL) structures, to user and process defined events,
including state transitions. ROS 602 may provide full control

information over pre-defined and user-defined application events. These control mechanisms include "go/no-go" permissions, and also include optional event-specific executables that permit complete flexibility in the processing and/or controlling of events.

5 This structure permits events to be individually controlled so that, for example, metering and budgeting may be provided using independent executables. For example, ROS 602 extends ACL structures to control arbitrary granularity of information. Traditional operating systems provide static "go-no go" control mechanisms at a file or resource level; ROS 602 extends the control concept in a general way from the largest to the smallest sub-element using a flexible control structure. ROS 602 can, for example, control the printing of a single paragraph out of a document file.

15

ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment permits secure modification and update of control information governing each component. The control information may be provided in a template format such as method options to an end-user. An end-user may then customize the actual control information used within guidelines provided by a distributor or content creator. Modification and update of existing control structures is

20

preferably also a controllable event subject to auditing and control information.

ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment validates control structures and secured executables prior to use. This validation provides assurance that control structures and executables have not been tampered with by end-users. The validation also permits ROS 602 to securely implement components that include fragments of files and other operating system structures. ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment integrates security considerations at the operating system I/O level (which is below the access level), and provides "on-the-fly" decryption of information at release time. These features permit non-secure storage of ROS 602 secured components and information using an OS layer "on top of" traditional operating system platforms.

ROS 602 is highly integratable with host platforms as an additional operating system layer. Thus, ROS 602 may be created by "adding on" to existing operating systems. This involves hooking VDE "add ons" to the host operating system at the device driver and network interface levels. Alternatively,

ROS 602 may comprise a wholly new operating system that integrates both VDE functions and other operating system functions.

5 Indeed, there are at least three general approaches to integrating VDE functions into a new operating system, potentially based on an existing operating system, to create a Rights Operating System 602 including:

- 10 (1) Redesign the operating system based on VDE transaction management requirements;
- (2) Compile VDE API functions into an existing operating systems; and
- (3) Integrate a VDE Interpreter into an existing operating system.

15 The first approach could be most effectively applied when a new operating system is being designed, or if a significant upgrade to an existing operating system is planned. The transaction management and security requirements provided by
20 the VDE functions could be added to the design requirements list for the design of a new operating system that provides, in an optimally efficient manner, an integration of "traditional"

operating system capabilities and VDE capabilities. For example, the engineers responsible for the design of the new version or instance of an operating system would include the requirements of VDE metering/transaction management in addition to other requirements (if any) that they use to form their design approach, specifications, and actual implementations. This approach could lead to a "seamless" integration of VDE functions and capabilities by threading metering/transaction management functionality throughout the system design and implementation.

The second approach would involve taking an existing set of API (Application Programmer Interface) functions, and incorporating references in the operating system code to VDE function calls. This is similar to the way that the current Windows operating system is integrated with DOS, wherein DOS serves as both the launch point and as a significant portion of the kernel underpinning of the Windows operating system. This approach would be also provide a high degree of "seamless" integration (although not quite as "seamless" as the first approach). The benefits of this approach include the possibility that the incorporation of metering/transaction management functionality into the new version or instance of an operating

system may be accomplished with lower cost (by making use of the existing code embodied in an API, and also using the design implications of the API functional approach to influence the design of the elements into which the metering/transaction management functionality is incorporated).

The third approach is distinct from the first two in that it does not incorporate VDE functionality associated with metering/transaction management and data security directly into the operating system code, but instead adds a new generalized capability to the operating system for executing metering/transaction management functionality. In this case, an interpreter including metering/transaction management functions would be integrated with other operating system code in a "stand alone" mode. This interpreter might take scripts or other inputs to determine what metering/transaction management functions should be performed, and in what order and under which circumstances or conditions they should be performed.

Instead of (or in addition to) integrating VDE functions into/with an electronic appliance operating system, it would be

possible to provide certain VDE functionality available as an application running on a conventional operating system.

ROS Software Architecture

5 Figure 10 is a block diagram of one example of a software structure/architecture for Rights Operating System ("ROS") 602 provided by the preferred embodiment. In this example, ROS 602 includes an operating system ("OS") "core" 679, a user Application Program Interface ("API") 682, a "redirector" 684, an
10 "intercept" 692, a User Notification/Exception Interface 686, and a file system 687. ROS 602 in this example also includes one or more Host Event Processing Environments ("HPEs") 655 and/or one or more Secure Event Processing Environments ("SPEs") 503 (these environments may be generically referred to as "Protected
15 Processing Environments" 650).

 HPE(s) 655 and SPE(s) 503 are self-contained computing and processing environments that may include their own operating system kernel 688 including code and data processing
20 resources. A given electronic appliance 600 may include any number of SPE(s) 503 and/or any number of HPE(s) 655. HPE(s) 655 and SPE(s) 503 may process information in a secure way,

and provide secure processing support for ROS 602. For example, they may each perform secure processing based on one or more VDE component assemblies 690, and they may each offer secure processing services to OS kernel 680.

5

In the preferred embodiment, SPE 503 is a secure processing environment provided at least in part by an SPU 500. Thus, SPU 500 provides the hardware tamper-resistant barrier 503 surrounding SPE 503. SPE 503 provided by the preferred embodiment is preferably:

10

- C small and compact
- C loadable into resource constrained environments such as for example minimally configured SPUs 500
- C dynamically updatable
- C extensible by authorized users
- C integratable into object or procedural environments
- C secure.

15

20

In the preferred embodiment, HPE 655 is a secure processing environment supported by a processor other than an

SPU, such as for example an electronic appliance CPU 654
general-purpose microprocessor or other processing system or
device. In the preferred embodiment, HPE 655 may be
considered to "emulate" an SPU 500 in the sense that it may use
5 software to provide some or all of the processing resources
provided in hardware and/or firmware by an SPU. HPE 655 in
one preferred embodiment of the present invention is full-
featured and fully compatible with SPE 503—that is, HPE 655
can handle each and every service call SPE 503 can handle such
10 that the SPE and the HPE are "plug compatible" from an outside
interface standpoint (with the exception that the HPE may not
provide as much security as the SPE).

HPEs 655 may be provided in two types: secure and not
15 secure. For example, it may be desirable to provide non-secure
versions of HPE 655 to allow electronic appliance 600 to
efficiently run non-sensitive VDE tasks using the full resources of
a fast general purpose processor or computer. Such non-secure
versions of HPE 655 may run under supervision of an instance of
20 ROS 602 that also includes an SPE 503. In this way, ROS 602
may run all secure processes within SPE 503, and only use HPE
655 for processes that do not require security but that may

require (or run more efficiently) under potentially greater resources provided by a general purpose computer or processor supporting HPE 655. Non-secure and secure HPE 655 may operate together with a secure SPE 503.

5

HPEs 655 may (as shown in Figure 10) be provided with a software-based tamper resistant barrier 674 that makes them more secure. Such a software-based tamper resistant barrier 674 may be created by software executing on general-purpose CPU

10 654. Such a "secure" HPE 655 can be used by ROS 602 to execute processes that, while still needing security, may not require the degree of security provided by SPU 500. This can be especially beneficial in architectures providing both an SPE 503 and an HPE 655. The SPU 502 may be used to perform all truly

15 secure processing, whereas one or more HPEs 655 may be used to provide additional secure (albeit possibly less secure than the SPE) processing using host processor or other general purpose resources that may be available within an electronic appliance

600. Any service may be provided by such a secure HPE 655. In

20 the preferred embodiment, certain aspects of "channel processing" appears to be a candidate that could be readily exported from SPE 503 to HPE 655.

The software-based tamper resistant barrier 674 provided by HPE 655 may be provided, for example, by: introducing time checks and/or code modifications to complicate the process of stepping through code comprising a portion of kernel 688a and/or a portion of component assemblies 690 using a debugger; using a map of defects on a storage device (e.g., a hard disk, memory card, etc.) to form internal test values to impede moving and/or copying HPE 655 to other electronic appliances 600; using kernel code that contains false branches and other complications in flow of control to disguise internal processes to some degree from disassembly or other efforts to discover details of processes; using "self-generating" code (based on the output of a co-sine transform, for example) such that detailed and/or complete instruction sequences are not stored explicitly on storage devices and/or in active memory but rather are generated as needed; using code that "shuffles" memory locations used for data values based on operational parameters to complicate efforts to manipulate such values; using any software and/or hardware memory management resources of electronic appliance 600 to "protect" the operation of HPE 655 from other processes, functions, etc. Although such a software-based tamper resistant barrier 674 may provide a fair degree of security, it typically will not be as

secure as the hardware-based tamper resistant barrier 502 provided (at least in part) by SPU 500. Because security may be better/more effectively enforced with the assistance of hardware security features such as those provided by SPU 500 (and
5 because of other factors such as increased performance provided by special purpose circuitry within SPU 500), at least one SPE 503 is preferred for many or most higher security applications. However, in applications where lesser security can be tolerated and/or the cost of an SPU 500 cannot be tolerated, the SPE 503
10 may be omitted and all secure processing may instead be performed by one or more secure HPEs 655 executing on general-purpose CPUs 654. Some VDE processes may not be allowed to proceed on reduced-security electronic appliances of this type if insufficient security is provided for the particular
15 process involved.

Only those processes that execute completely within SPEs 503 (and in some cases, HPEs 655) may be considered to be truly secure. Memory and other resources external to SPE 503 and
20 HPEs 655 used to store and/or process code and/or data to be used in secure processes should only receive and handle that information in encrypted form unless SPE 503/HPE 655 can

protect secure process code and/or data from non-secure processes.

OS "core" 679 in the preferred embodiment includes a
5 kernel 680, an RPC manager 732, and an "object switch" 734.
API 682, HPE 655 and SPE 503 may communicate "event"
messages with one another via OS "core" 679. They may also
communicate messages directly with one another without
messages going through OS "core" 679.

10

Kernel 680 may manage the hardware of an electronic
appliance 600. For example, it may provide appropriate drivers
and hardware managers for interacting with input/output and/or
peripheral devices such as keyboard 612, display 614, other
15 devices such as a "mouse" pointing device and speech recognizer
613, modem 618, printer 622, and an adapter for network 672.
Kernel 680 may also be responsible for initially loading the
remainder of ROS 602, and may manage the various ROS tasks
(and associated underlying hardware resources) during
20 execution. OS kernel 680 may also manage and access secure
database 610 and file system 687. OS kernel 680 also provides

execution services for applications 608a(1), 608a(2), etc. and other applications.

5 RPC manager 732 performs messaging routing and resource management/integration for ROS 680. It receives and routes "calls" from/to API 682, HPE 655 and SPE 503, for example.

10 Object switch 734 may manage construction, deconstruction and other manipulation of VDE objects 300.

15 User Notification/Exception Interface 686 in the preferred embodiment (which may be considered part of API 682 or another application coupled to the API) provides "pop up" windows/displays on display 614. This allows ROS 602 to communicate directly with a user without having to pass information to be communicated through applications 608. For applications that are not "VDE aware," user notification/exception interface 686 may provide communications
20 between ROS 602 and the user.

API 682 in the preferred embodiment provides a standardized, documented software interface to applications 608. In part, API 682 may translate operating system "calls" generated by applications 608 into Remote Procedure Calls ("RPCs") specifying "events." RPC manager 732 may route these RPCs to kernel 680 or elsewhere (e.g., to HPE(s) 655 and/or SPE(s) 503, or to remote electronic appliances 600, processors, or VDE participants) for processing. The API 682 may also service RPC requests by passing them to applications 608 that register to receive and process specific requests.

API 682 provides an "Applications Programming Interface" that is preferably standardized and documented. It provides a concise set of function calls an application program can use to access services provided by ROS 602. In at least one preferred example, API 682 will include two parts: an application program interface to VDE functions 604; and an application program interface to other OS functions 606. These parts may be interwoven into the same software, or they may be provided as two or more discrete pieces of software (for example).

Some applications, such as application 608a(1) shown in Figure 11, may be "VDE aware" and may therefore directly access both of these parts of API 682. Figure 11A shows an example of this. A "VDE aware" application may, for example, include explicit calls to ROS 602 requesting the creation of new VDE objects 300, metering usage of VDE objects, storing information in VDE-protected form, etc. Thus, a "VDE aware" application can initiate (and, in some examples, enhance and/or extend) VDE functionality provided by ROS 602. In addition, "VDE aware" applications may provide a more direct interface between a user and ROS 602 (e.g., by suppressing or otherwise dispensing with "pop up" displays otherwise provided by user notification/exception interface 686 and instead providing a more "seamless" interface that integrates application and ROS messages).

Other applications, such as application 608b shown in Figure 11B, may not be "VDE Aware" and therefore may not "know" how to directly access an interface to VDE functions 604 provided by API 682. To provide for this, ROS 602 may include a "redirector" 684 that allows such "non-VDE aware" applications 608(b) to access VDE objects 300 and functions 604. Redirector

684, in the preferred embodiment, translates OS calls directed to the "other OS functions" 606 into calls to the "VDE functions"

604. As one simple example, redirector 684 may intercept a "file open" call from application 608(b), determine whether the file to

5 be opened is contained within a VDE container 300, and if it is, generate appropriate VDE function call(s) to file system 687 to open the VDE container (and potentially generate events to HPE

655 and/or SPE 503 to determine the name(s) of file(s) that may be stored in a VDE object 300, establish a control structure

10 associated with a VDE object 300, perform a registration for a VDE object 300, etc.). Without redirector 684 in this example, a non-VDE aware application such as 608b could access only the part of API 682 that provides an interface to other OS functions 606, and therefore could not access any VDE functions.

15 This "translation" feature of redirector 684 provides "transparency." It allows VDE functions to be provided to the application 608(b) in a "transparent" way without requiring the application to become involved in the complexity and details
20 associated with generating the one or more calls to VDE functions 604. This aspect of the "transparency" features of ROS 602 has at least two important advantages:

- (a) it allows applications not written specifically for VDE functions 604 ("non-VDE aware applications") to nevertheless access critical VDE functions; and
- (b) it reduces the complexity of the interface between an application and ROS 602.

Since the second advantage (reducing complexity) makes it easier for an application creator to produce applications, even "VDE aware" applications 608a(2) may be designed so that some calls invoking VDE functions 604 are requested at the level of an "other OS functions" call and then "translated" by redirector 684 into a VDE function call (in this sense, redirector 684 may be considered a part of API 682). Figure 11C shows an example of this. Other calls invoking VDE functions 604 may be passed directly without translation by redirector 684.

Referring again to Figure 10, ROS 620 may also include an "interceptor" 692 that transmits and/or receives one or more real time data feeds 694 (this may be provided over cable(s) 628 for example), and routes one or more such data feeds appropriately while providing "translation" functions for real time data sent and/or received by electronic appliance 600 to allow "transparency" for this type of information analogous to the

transparency provided by redirector 684 (and/or it may generate one or more real time data feeds).

Secure ROS Components and Component Assemblies

5 As discussed above, ROS 602 in the preferred embodiment is a component-based architecture. ROS VDE functions 604 may be based on segmented, independently loadable executable "component assemblies" 690. These component assemblies 690 are independently securely deliverable. The component
10 assemblies 690 provided by the preferred embodiment comprise code and data elements that are themselves independently deliverable. Thus, each component assembly 690 provided by the preferred embodiment is comprised of independently securely deliverable elements which may be communicated using VDE
15 secure communication techniques, between VDE secure subsystems.

 These component assemblies 690 are the basic functional unit provided by ROS 602. The component assemblies 690 are
20 executed to perform operating system or application tasks. Thus, some component assemblies 690 may be considered to be part of the ROS operating system 602, while other component

assemblies may be considered to be "applications" that run under the support of the operating system. As with any system incorporating "applications" and "operating systems," the boundary between these aspects of an overall system can be ambiguous. For example, commonly used "application" functions (such as determining the structure and/or other attributes of a content container) may be incorporated into an operating system. Furthermore, "operating system" functions (such as task management, or memory allocation) may be modified and/or replaced by an application. A common thread in the preferred embodiment's ROS 602 is that component assemblies 690 provide functions needed for a user to fulfill her intended activities, some of which may be "application-like" and some of which may be "operating system-like."

15

Components 690 are preferably designed to be easily separable and individually loadable. ROS 602 assembles these elements together into an executable component assembly 690 prior to loading and executing the component assembly (e.g., in a secure operating environment such as SPE 503 and/or HPE 655). ROS 602 provides an element identification and referencing mechanism that includes information necessary to automatically

20

assemble elements into a component assembly 690 in a secure manner prior to, and/or during, execution.

ROS 602 application structures and control parameters
5 used to form component assemblies 690 can be provided by
different parties. Because the components forming component
assemblies 690 are independently securely deliverable, they may
be delivered at different times and/or by different parties
("delivery" may take place within a local VDE secure subsystem,
10 that is submission through the use of such a secure subsystem of
control information by a chain of content control information
handling participant for the preparation of a modified control
information set constitutes independent, secure delivery). For
example, a content creator can produce a ROS 602 application
15 that defines the circumstances required for licensing content
contained within a VDE object 300. This application may
reference structures provided by other parties. Such references
might, for example, take the form of a control path that uses
content creator structures to meter user activities; and structures
20 created/owned by a financial provider to handle financial parts of
a content distribution transaction (e.g., defining a credit budget
that must be present in a control structure to establish

creditworthiness, audit processes which must be performed by the licensee, etc.). As another example, a distributor may give one user more favorable pricing than another user by delivering different data elements defining pricing to different users. This
5 attribute of supporting multiple party securely, independently deliverable control information is fundamental to enabling electronic commerce, that is, defining of a content and/or appliance control information set that represents the requirements of a collection of independent parties such as
10 content creators, other content providers, financial service providers, and/or users.

In the preferred embodiment, ROS 602 assembles securely independently deliverable elements into a component assembly
15 690 based in part on context parameters (e.g., object, user). Thus, for example, ROS 602 may securely assemble different elements together to form different component assemblies 690 for different users performing the same task on the same VDE object 300. Similarly, ROS 602 may assemble differing element sets
20 which may include, that is reuse, one or more of the same components to form different component assemblies 690 for the

same user performing the same task on different VDE objects
300.

The component assembly organization provided by ROS
5 602 is "recursive" in that a component assembly 690 may
comprise one or more component "subassemblies" that are
themselves independently loadable and executable component
assemblies 690. These component "subassemblies" may, in turn,
be made of one or more component "sub-sub-assemblies." In the
10 general case, a component assembly 690 may include N levels of
component subassemblies.

Thus, for example, a component assembly 690(k) that may
includes a component subassembly 690(k + 1). Component
15 subassembly 690(k + 1), in turn, may include a component sub-
sub-assembly 690(3), ... and so on to N-level subassembly 690(k +
N). The ability of ROS 602 to build component assemblies 690
out of other component assemblies provides great advantages in
terms of, for example, code/data reusability, and the ability to
20 allow different parties to manage different parts of an overall
component.

Each component assembly 690 in the preferred embodiment is made of distinct components. Figures 11D-11H are abstract depictions of various distinct components that may be assembled to form a component assembly 690(k) showing
5 Figure 11I. These same components can be combined in different ways (e.g., with more or less components) to form different component assemblies 690 providing completely different functional behavior. Figure 11J is an abstract depiction of the same components being put together in a different way (e.g., with
10 additional components) to form a different component assembly 690(j). The component assemblies 690(k) and 690(j) each include a common feature 691 that interlocks with a "channel" 594 defined by ROS 602. This "channel" 594 assembles component assemblies 690 and interfaces them with the (rest of) ROS 602.

15 ROS 602 generates component assemblies 690 in a secure manner. As shown graphically in Figures 11I and 11J, the different elements comprising a component assembly 690 may be "interlocking" in the sense that they can only go together in ways
20 that are intended by the VDE participants who created the elements and/or specified the component assemblies. ROS 602 includes security protections that can prevent an unauthorized

person from modifying elements, and also prevent an unauthorized person from substituting elements. One can picture an unauthorized person making a new element having the same "shape" as the one of the elements shown in Figures 11D-11H, and then attempting to substitute the new element in place of the original element. Suppose one of the elements shown in Figure 11H establishes the price for using content within a VDE object 300. If an unauthorized person could substitute her own "price" element for the price element intended by the VDE content distributor, then the person could establish a price of zero instead of the price the content distributor intended to charge. Similarly, if the element establishes an electronic credit card, then an ability to substitute a different element could have disastrous consequences in terms of allowing a person to charge her usage to someone else's (or a non-existent) credit card. These are merely a few simple examples demonstrating the importance of ROS 602 ensuring that certain component assemblies 690 are formed in a secure manner. ROS 602 provides a wide range of protections against a wide range of "threats" to the secure handling and execution of component assemblies 690.

In the preferred embodiment, ROS 602 assembles component assemblies 690 based on the following types of elements:

Permissions Records ("PERC"s) 808;

5 Method "Cores" 1000;

Load Modules 1100;

Data Elements (e.g., User Data Elements ("UDEs") 1200 and Method Data Elements ("MDEs") 1202); and

Other component assemblies 690.

10

Briefly, a PERC 808 provided by the preferred embodiment is a record corresponding to a VDE object 300 that identifies to ROS 602, among other things, the elements ROS is to assemble together to form a component assembly 690. Thus PERC 808 in effect contains a "list of assembly instructions" or a "plan" specifying what elements ROS 602 is to assemble together into a component assembly and how the elements are to be connected together. PERC 808 may itself contain data or other elements that are to become part of the component assembly 690.

15

20

The PERC 808 may reference one or more method "cores" 1000N. A method core 1000N may define a basic "method" 1000 (e.g., "control," "billing," "metering," etc.)

5 In the preferred embodiment, a "method" 1000 is a collection of basic instructions, and information related to basic instructions, that provides context, data, requirements, and/or relationships for use in performing, and/or preparing to perform, basic instructions in relation to the operation of one or more
10 electronic appliances 600. Basic instructions may be comprised of, for example:

- 15 C machine code of the type commonly used in the programming of computers; pseudo-code for use by an interpreter or other instruction processing program operating on a computer;
- C a sequence of electronically represented logical operations for use with an electronic appliance 600;
- 20 C or other electronic representations of instructions, source code, object code, and/or pseudo code as those terms are commonly understood in the arts.

Information relating to said basic instructions may
comprise, for example, data associated intrinsically with basic
instructions such as for example, an identifier for the combined
basic instructions and intrinsic data, addresses, constants, and/or
5 the like. The information may also, for example, include one or
more of the following:

- 10 C information that identifies associated basic
instructions and said intrinsic data for access,
correlation and/or validation purposes;
- C required and/or optional parameters for use with
basic instructions and said intrinsic data;
- C information defining relationships to other methods;
- 15 C data elements that may comprise data values, fields
of information, and/or the like;
- C information specifying and/or defining relationships
among data elements, basic instructions and/or
intrinsic data;
- 20 C information specifying relationships to external data
elements;

- C information specifying relationships between and among internal and external data elements, methods, and/or the like, if any exist; and
- 5 C additional information required in the operation of basic instructions and intrinsic data to complete, or attempt to complete, a purpose intended by a user of a method, where required, including additional instructions and/or intrinsic data.

10

Such information associated with a method may be stored, in part or whole, separately from basic instructions and intrinsic data. When these components are stored separately, a method may nevertheless include and encompass the other information and one or more sets of basic instructions and intrinsic data (the latter being included because of said other information's reference to one or more sets of basic instructions and intrinsic data), whether or not said one or more sets of basic instructions and intrinsic data are accessible at any given point in time.

20

Method core 1000' may be parameterized by an "event code" to permit it to respond to different events in different ways.

For example, a METER method may respond to a "use" event by storing usage information in a meter data structure. The same METER method may respond to an "administrative" event by reporting the meter data structure to a VDE clearinghouse or
5 other VDE participant.

In the preferred embodiment, method core 1000' may "contain," either explicitly or by reference, one or more "load modules" 1100 and one or more data elements (UDEs 1200,
10 MDEs 1202). In the preferred embodiment, a "load module" 1100 is a portion of a method that reflects basic instructions and intrinsic data. Load modules 1100 in the preferred embodiment contain executable code, and may also contain data elements ("DTDs" 1108) associated with the executable code. In the
15 preferred embodiment, load modules 1100 supply the program instructions that are actually "executed" by hardware to perform the process defined by the method. Load modules 1100 may contain or reference other load modules.

20 Load modules 1100 in the preferred embodiment are modular and "code pure" so that individual load modules may be reenterable and reusable. In order for components 690 to be

dynamically updatable, they may be individually addressable within a global public name space. In view of these design goals, load modules 1100 are preferably small, code (and code-like) pure modules that are individually named and addressable. A single
5 method may provide different load modules 1100 that perform the same or similar functions on different platforms, thereby making the method scalable and/or portable across a wide range of different electronic appliances.

10 UDEs 1200 and MDEs 1202 may store data for input to or output from executable component assembly 690 (or data describing such inputs and/or outputs). In the preferred embodiment, UDEs 1200 may be user dependent, whereas MDEs 1202 may be user independent.

15 The component assembly example 690(k) shown in Figure 11E comprises a method core 1000', UDEs 1200a & 1200b, an MDE 1202, load modules 1100a-1100d, and a further component assembly 690(k+1). As mentioned above, a PERC 808(k) defines,
20 among other things, the "assembly instructions" for component assembly 690(k), and may contain or reference parts of some or

all of the components that are to be assembled to create a component assembly.

One of the load modules 1100b shown in this example is
5 itself comprised of plural load modules 1100c, 1100d. Some of the
load modules (e.g., 1100a, 1100d) in this example include one or
more "DTD" data elements 1108 (e.g., 1108a, 1108b). "DTD" data
elements 1108 may be used, for example, to inform load module
1100a of the data elements included in MDE 1202 and/or UDEs
10 1200a, 1200b. Furthermore, DTDs 1108 may be used as an
aspect of forming a portion of an application used to inform a
user as to the information required and/or manipulated by one or
more load modules 1100, or other component elements. Such an
application program may also include functions for creating
15 and/or manipulating UDE(s) 1200, MDE(s) 1202, or other
component elements, subassemblies, etc.

Components within component assemblies 690 may be
"reused" to form different component assemblies. As mentioned
20 above, figure 11F is an abstract depiction of one example of the
same components used for assembling component assembly
690(k) to be reused (e.g., with some additional components

specified by a different set of "assembly instructions" provided in a different PERC 808(l)) to form a different component assembly 690(l). Even though component assembly 690(l) is formed from some of the same components used to form component assembly 690(k), these two component assemblies may perform completely different processes in complete different ways.

As mentioned above, ROS 602 provides several layers of security to ensure the security of component assemblies 690. One important security layer involves ensuring that certain component assemblies 690 are formed, loaded and executed only in secure execution space such as provided within an SPU 500. Components 690 and/or elements comprising them may be stored on external media encrypted using local SPU 500 generated and/or distributor provided keys.

ROS 602 also provides a tagging and sequencing scheme that may be used within the loadable component assemblies 690 to detect tampering by substitution. Each element comprising a component assembly 690 may be loaded into an SPU 500, decrypted using encrypt/decrypt engine 522, and then tested/compared to ensure that the proper element has been loaded. Several independent comparisons may be used to ensure

there has been no unauthorized substitution. For example, the public and private copies of the element ID may be compared to ensure that they are the same, thereby preventing gross substitution of elements. In addition, a validation/correlation tag stored under the encrypted layer of the loadable element may be compared to make sure it matches one or more tags provided by a requesting process. This prevents unauthorized use of information. As a third protection, a device assigned tag (e.g., a sequence number) stored under an encryption layer of a loadable element may be checked to make sure it matches a corresponding tag value expected by SPU 500. This prevents substitution of older elements. Validation/correlation tags are typically passed only in secure wrappers to prevent plaintext exposure of this information outside of SPU 500.

The secure component based architecture of ROS 602 has important advantages. For example, it accommodates limited resource execution environments such as provided by a lower cost SPU 500. It also provides an extremely high level of configurability. In fact, ROS 602 will accommodate an almost unlimited diversity of content types, content provider objectives, transaction types and client requirements. In addition, the

ability to dynamically assemble independently deliverable components at execution time based on particular objects and users provides a high degree of flexibility, and facilitates or enables a distributed database, processing, and execution environment.

One aspect of an advantage of the component-based architecture provided by ROS 602 relates to the ability to "stage" functionality and capabilities over time. As designed, implementation of ROS 602 is a finite task. Aspects of its wealth of functionality can remain unexploited until market realities dictate the implementation of corresponding VDE application functionality. As a result, initial product implementation investment and complexity may be limited. The process of "surfacing" the full range of capabilities provided by ROS 602 in terms of authoring, administrative, and artificial intelligence applications may take place over time. Moreover, already-designed functionality of ROS 602 may be changed or enhanced at any time to adapt to changing needs or requirements.

More Detailed Discussion of Rights Operating System 602 Architecture

Figure 12 shows an example of a detailed architecture of ROS 602 shown in Figure 10. ROS 602 may include a file system 687 that includes a commercial database manager 730 and external object repositories 728. Commercial database manager 730 may maintain secure database 610. Object repository 728 may store, provide access to, and/or maintain VDE objects 300.

Figure 12 also shows that ROS 602 may provide one or more SPEs 503 and/or one or more HPEs 655. As discussed above, HPE 655 may "emulate" an SPU 500 device, and such HPEs 655 may be integrated in lieu of (or in addition to) physical SPUs 500 for systems that need higher throughput. Some security may be lost since HPEs 655 are typically protected by operating system security and may not provide truly secure processing. Thus, in the preferred embodiment, for high security applications at least, all secure processing should take place within an SPE 503 having an execution space within a physical SPU 500 rather than a HPE 655 using software operating elsewhere in electronic appliance 600.

As mentioned above, three basic components of ROS 602 are a kernel 680, a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) manager 732 and an object switch 734. These components, and the way they interact with other portions of ROS 602, will be discussed below.

5

Kernel 680

Kernel 680 manages the basic hardware resources of electronic appliance 600, and controls the basic tasking provided by ROS 602. Kernel 680 in the preferred embodiment may include a memory manager 680a, a task manager 680b, and an I/O manager 680c. Task manager 680b may initiate and/or manage initiation of executable tasks and schedule them to be executed by a processor on which ROS 602 runs (e.g., CPU 654 shown in Figure 8). For example, Task manager 680b may include or be associated with a "bootstrap loader" that loads other parts of ROS 602. Task manager 680b may manage all tasking related to ROS 602, including tasks associated with application program(s) 608. Memory manager 680a may manage allocation, deallocation, sharing and/or use of memory (e.g., RAM 656 shown in Figure 8) of electronic appliance 600, and may for example provide virtual memory capabilities as required by an electronic appliance and/or associated application(s). I/O manager 680c

20

may manage all input to and output from ROS 602, and may interact with drivers and other hardware managers that provide communications and interactivity with physical devices.

5 **RPC Manager 732**

ROS 602 in a preferred embodiment is designed around a "services based" Remote Procedure Call architecture/interface. All functions performed by ROS 602 may use this common interface to request services and share information. For example, SPE(s) 503 provide processing for one or more RPC based services. In addition to supporting SPUs 500, the RPC interface permits the dynamic integration of external services and provides an array of configuration options using existing operating system components. ROS 602 also communicates with external services through the RPC interface to seamlessly provide distributed and/or remote processing. In smaller scale instances of ROS 602, a simpler message passing IPC protocol may be used to conserve resources. This may limit the configurability of ROS 602 services, but this possible limitation may be acceptable in some electronic appliances.

The RPC structure allows services to be called/requested without the calling process having to know or specify where the service is physically provided, what system or device will service the request, or how the service request will be fulfilled. This feature supports families of services that may be scaled and/or customized for specific applications. Service requests can be forwarded and serviced by different processors and/or different sites as easily as they can be forwarded and serviced by a local service system. Since the same RPC interface is used by ROS 602 in the preferred embodiment to request services within and outside of the operating system, a request for distributed and/or remote processing incurs substantially no additional operating system overhead. Remote processing is easily and simply integrated as part of the same service calls used by ROS 602 for requesting local-based services. In addition, the use of a standard RPC interface ("RSI") allows ROS 602 to be modularized, with the different modules presenting a standardized interface to the remainder of the operating system. Such modularization and standardized interfacing permits different vendors/operating system programmers to create different portions of the operating system independently, and also allows the functionality of ROS 602 to be flexibly updated

and/or changed based on different requirements and/or platforms.

5 RPC manager 732 manages the RPC interface. It receives service requests in the form of one or more "Remote Procedure Calls" (RPCs) from a service requestor, and routes the service requests to a service provider(s) that can service the request. For example, when rights operating system 602 receives a request from a user application via user API 682, RPC manager 732 may
10 route the service request to an appropriate service through the "RPC service interface" ("RSI"). The RSI is an interface between RPC manager 732, service requestors, and a resource that will accept and service requests.

15 The RPC interface (RSI) is used for several major ROS 602 subsystems in the preferred embodiment.

 RPC services provided by ROS 602 in the preferred embodiment are divided into subservices, i.e., individual
20 instances of a specific service each of which may be tracked individually by the RPC manager 732. This mechanism permits multiple instances of a specific service on higher throughput

systems while maintaining a common interface across a spectrum of implementations. The subservice concept extends to supporting multiple processors, multiple SPEs 503, multiple HPEs 655, and multiple communications services.

5

The preferred embodiment ROS 602 provides the following RPC based service providers/requestors (each of which have an RPC interface or "RSI" that communicates with RPC manager 732):

10

SPE device driver 736 (this SPE device driver is connected to an SPE 503 in the preferred embodiment);

HPE Device Driver 738 (this HPE device driver is connected to an HPE 738 in the preferred embodiment);

15

Notification Service 740 (this notification service is connected to user notification interface 686 in the preferred embodiment);

API Service 742 (this API service is connected to user API 682 in the preferred embodiment);

20

Redirector 684;

Secure Database (File) Manager 744 (this secure database or file manager 744 may connect to and interact with

commercial database manager 730 and secure files
610 through a cache manager 746, a database
interface 748, and a database driver 750);
Name Services Manager 752;
5 Outgoing Administrative Objects Manager 754;
Incoming Administrative Objects Manager 756;
a Gateway 734 to object switch 734 (this is a path used to
allow direct communication between RPC manager
732 and Object Switch 734); and
10 Communications Manager 776.

The types of services provided by HPE 655, SPE 503, User
Notification 686, API 742 and Redirector 684 have already been
described above. Here is a brief description of the type(s) of
15 services provided by OS resources 744, 752, 754, 756 and 776:

Secure Database Manager 744 services requests for access
to secure database 610;
Name Services Manager 752 services requests relating to
user, host, or service identification;
20 Outgoing Administrative Objects Manager 754 services
requests relating to outgoing administrative objects;

Incoming Administrative Objects Manager 756 services

requests relating to incoming administrative objects;

and

Communications Manager 776 services requests relating to

5 communications between electronic appliance 600
and the outside world.

Object Switch 734

Object switch 734 handles, controls and communicates
10 (both locally and remotely) VDE objects 300. In the preferred
embodiment, the object switch may include the following
elements:

a stream router 758;

a real time stream interface(s) 760 (which may be

15 connected to real time data feed(s) 694);

a time dependent stream interface(s) 762;

a intercept 692;

a container manager 764;

one or more routing tables 766; and

20 buffering/storage 768.

Stream router 758 routes to/from "real time" and "time
independent" data streams handled respectively by real time

stream interface(s) 760 and time dependent stream interface(s)
762. Intercept 692 intercepts I/O requests that involve real-time
information streams such as, for example, real time feed 694.
The routing performed by stream router 758 may be determined
5 by routing tables 766. Buffering/storage 768 provides temporary
store-and-forward, buffering and related services. Container
manager 764 may (typically in conjunction with SPE 503)
perform processes on VDE objects 300 such as constructing,
deconstructing, and locating portions of objects.

10

Object switch 734 communicates through an Object Switch
Interface ("OSI") with other parts of ROS 602. The Object Switch
Interface may resemble, for example, the interface for a Unix
socket in the preferred embodiment. Each of the "OSI" interfaces
15 shown in Figure 12 have the ability to communicate with object
switch 734.

ROS 602 includes the following object switch service
providers/resources (each of which can communicate with the
20 object switch 734 through an "OSI"):

Outgoing Administrative Objects Manager 754;

Incoming Administrative Objects Manager 756;

Gateway 734 (which may translate RPC calls into object switch calls and vice versa so RPC manager 732 may communicate with object switch 734 or any other element having an OSI to, for example, provide and/or request services);

External Services Manager 772;
Object Submittal Manager 774; and
Communications Manager 776.

Briefly,

Object Repository Manager 770 provides services relating to access to object repository 728;

External Services Manager 772 provides services relating to requesting and receiving services externally, such as from a network resource or another site;

Object Submittal Manager 774 provides services relating to how a user application may interact with object switch 734 (since the object submittal manager provides an interface to an application program 608, it could be considered part of user API 682); and

Communications Manager 776 provides services relating to communicating with the outside world.

In the preferred embodiment, communications manager 776 may include a network manager 780 and a mail gateway (manager) 782. Mail gateway 782 may include one or more mail filters 784 to, for example, automatically route VDE related electronic mail between object switch 734 and the outside world electronic mail services. External Services Manager 772 may interface to communications manager 776 through a Service Transport Layer 786. Service Transport Layer 786a may enable External Services Manager 772 to communicate with external computers and systems using various protocols managed using the service transport layer 786.

The characteristics of and interfaces to the various subsystems of ROS 680 shown in Figure 12 are described in more detail below.

RPC Manager 732 and Its RPC Services Interface

As discussed above, the basic system services provided by ROS 602 are invoked by using an RPC service interface (RSI). This RPC service interface provides a generic, standardized interface for different services systems and subsystems provided by ROS 602.

RPC Manager 732 routes RPCs requesting services to an appropriate RPC service interface. In the preferred embodiment, upon receiving an RPC call, RPC manager 732 determines one or more service managers that are to service the request. RPC
5 manager 732 then routes a service request to the appropriate service(s) (via a RSI associated with a service) for action by the appropriate service manager(s).

For example, if a SPE 503 is to service a request, the RPC
10 Manager 732 routes the request to RSI 736a, which passes the request on to SPE device driver 736 for forwarding to the SPE. Similarly, if HPE 655 is to service the request, RPC Manager 732 routes the request to RSI 738a for forwarding to a HPE. In one preferred embodiment, SPE 503 and HPE 655 may perform
15 essentially the same services so that RSIs 736a, 738a are different instances of the same RSI. Once a service request has been received by SPE 503 (or HPE 655), the SPE (or HPE) typically dispatches the request internally using its own internal RPC manager (as will be discussed shortly). Processes within
20 SPEs 503 and HPEs 655 can also generate RPC requests. These requests may be processed internally by a SPE/HPE, or if not

internally serviceable, passed out of the SPE/HPE for dispatch by
RPC Manager 732.

5 Remote (and local) procedure calls may be dispatched by a
RPC Manager 732 using an "RPC Services Table." An RPC
Services Table describes where requests for specific services are
to be routed for processing. Each row of an RPC Services Table
in the preferred embodiment contains a services ID, the location
of the service, and an address to which control will be passed to
10 service a request. An RPC Services Table may also include
control information that indicates which instance of the RPC
dispatcher controls the service. Both RPC Manager 732 and any
attached SPEs 503 and HPEs 655 may have symmetric copies of
the RPC Services Table. If an RPC service is not found in the
15 RPC services tables, it is either rejected or passed to external
services manager 772 for remote servicing.

Assuming RPC manager 732 finds a row corresponding to
the request in an RPC Services Table, it may dispatch the
20 request to an appropriate RSI. The receiving RSI accepts a
request from the RPC manager 732 (which may have looked up
the request in an RPC service table), and processes that request

in accordance with internal priorities associated with the specific service.

In the preferred embodiment, RPC Service Interface(s) supported by RPC Manager 732 may be standardized and published to support add-on service modules developed by third party vendors, and to facilitate scalability by making it easier to program ROS 602. The preferred embodiment RSI closely follows the DOS and Unix device driver models for block devices so that common code may be developed for many platforms with minimum effort. An example of one possible set of common entry points are listed below in the table.

Interface call	Description
SVC_LOAD	Load a service manager and return its status.
SVC_UNLOAD	Unload a service manager.
SVC_MOUNT	Mount (load) a dynamically loaded subservice and return its status.
SVC_UNMOUNT	Unmount (unload) a dynamically loaded subservice.
SVC_OPEN	Open a mounted subservice.
SVC_CLOSE	Close a mounted subservice.
SVC_READ	Read a block from an opened subservice.

SVC_WRITE	Write a block to an opened subservice.
SVC_IOCTL	Control a subservice or a service manager.

Load

5 In the preferred embodiment, services (and the associated
RSIs they present to RPC manager 732) may be activated during
boot by an installation boot process that issues an RPC LOAD.
This process reads an RPC Services Table from a configuration
file, loads the service module if it is run time loadable (as opposed
10 to being a kernel linked device driver), and then calls the LOAD
entry point for the service. A successful return from the LOAD
entry point will indicate that the service has properly loaded and
is ready to accept requests.

15 RPC LOAD Call Example: SVC_LOAD (long service_id)

 This LOAD interface call is called by the RPC manager 732
during rights operating system 602 initialization. It permits a
service manager to load any dynamically loadable components
and to initialize any device and memory required by the service..
20 The service number that the service is loaded as is passed in as
service_id parameter. In the preferred embodiment, the service

returns 0 if the initialization process was completed successfully or an error number if some error occurred.

Mount

5 Once a service has been loaded, it may not be fully functional for all subservices. Some subservices (e.g., communications based services) may require the establishment of additional connections, or they may require additional modules to be loaded. If the service is defined as "mountable," a RPC
10 manager 732 will call the MOUNT subservice entry point with the requested subservice ID prior to opening an instance of a subservice.

RPC MOUNT Call Example:

15 SVC_MOUNT (long service_id, long subservice_id, BYTE *buffer)

 This MOUNT interface call instructs a service to make a specific subservice ready. This may include services related to networking, communications, other system services, or external
20 resources. The service_id and subservice_id parameters may be specific to the specific service being requested. The buffer

parameter is a memory address that references a control structure appropriate to a specific service.

Open

5 Once a service is loaded and "mounted," specific instances of a service may be "opened" for use. "Opening" an instance of a service may allocate memory to store control and status information. For example, in a BSD socket based network connection, a LOAD call will initialize the software and protocol control tables, a MOUNT call will specify networks and hardware
10 resources, and an OPEN will actually open a socket to a remote installation.

 Some services, such as commercial database manager 730
15 that underlies the secure database service, may not be "mountable." In this case, a LOAD call will make a connection to a database manager 730 and ensure that records are readable. An OPEN call may create instances of internal cache manager 746 for various classes of records.

20

RPC OPEN Call Example:

SVC_OPEN (long service_id, long subservice_id, BYTE

***buffer, int (*receive) (long request_id))**

This OPEN interface call instructs a service to open a specific subservice. The **service_id** and **subservice_id** parameters are specific to the specific service being requested, and the **buffer** parameter is a memory address that references a control structure appropriate to a specific service.

The optional **receive** parameter is the address of a notification callback function that is called by a service whenever a message is ready for the service to retrieve it. One call to this address is made for each incoming message received. If the caller passes a NULL to the interface, the software will not generate a callback for each message.

15 Close, Unmount and Unload

The converse of the OPEN, MOUNT, and LOAD calls are CLOSE, UNMOUNT, and UNLOAD. These interface calls release any allocated resources back to ROS 602 (e.g., memory manager 680a).

20

RPC CLOSE Call Example: SVC_CLOSE (long svc_handle)

This LOAD interface call closes an open service "handle."

A service "handle" describes a service and subservice that a user wants to close. The call returns 0 if the CLOSE request succeeds
5 (and the handle is no longer valid) or an error number.

RPC UNLOAD Call Example: SVC_UNLOAD (void)

This UNLOAD interface call is called by a RPC manager
732 during shutdown or resource reallocation of rights operating
10 system 602. It permits a service to close any open connections,
flush buffers, and to release any operating system resources that
it may have allocated. The service returns 0.

**RPC UNMOUNT Call Example: SVC_UNMOUNT (long
15 service_id, long subservice_id)**

This UNMOUNT interface call instructs a service to
deactivate a specific subservice. The service_id and
subservice_id parameters are specific to the specific service
being requested, and must have been previously mounted using
20 the SVC_MOUNT() request. The call releases all system
resources associated with the subservice before it returns.

Read and Write

The READ and WRITE calls provide a basic mechanism for sending information to and receiving responses from a mounted and opened service. For example, a service has requests written to it in the form of an RPC request, and makes its response available to be read by RPC Manager 732 as they become available.

RPC READ Call Example:

10 SVC_READ (long svc_handle, long request_id, BYTE
 *buffer, long size)

This READ call reads a message response from a service. The svc_handle and request_id parameters uniquely identify a request. The results of a request will be stored in the user specified buffer up to size bytes. If the buffer is too small, the first size bytes of the message will be stored in the buffer and an error will be returned.

20 If a message response was returned to the caller's buffer correctly, the function will return 0. Otherwise, an error message will be returned.

RPC WRITE Call Example:

SVC_write (long service_id, long subservice_id, BYTE
*buffer, long size, int (*receive) (long request_id)

5 This WRITE call writes a message to a service and
subservice specified by the service_id/subservice_id parameter
pair. The message is stored in buffer (and usually conforms to
the VDE RPC message format) and is size bytes long. The
function returns the request id for the message (if it was
accepted for sending) or an error number. If a user specifies the
10 receive callback functions, all messages regarding a request will
be sent to the request specific callback routine instead of the
generalized message callback.

Input/Output Control

15 The IOCTL ("Input/Output ConTroL") call provides a
mechanism for querying the status of and controlling a loaded
service. Each service type will respond to specific general IOCTL
requests, all required class IOCTL requests, and service specific
IOCTL requests.

20

RPC IOCTL Call Example: ROI_SVC_IOCTL (long service_id,
long subservice_id,
int command, BYTE *buffer)

5 This IOCTL function provides a generalized control
interface for a RSI. A user specifies the service_id parameter
and an optional subservice_id parameter that they wish to
control. They specify the control command parameter(s), and a
buffer into/from which the command parameters may be
10 written/read. An example of a list of commands and the
appropriate buffer structures are given below.

Command	Structure	Description
GET_INFO	SVC_INFO	Returns information about a service/subservice.
15 GET_STATS	SVC_STATS	Returns current statistics about a service/subservice.
CLR_STATS	None	Clears the statistics about a service/subservice.

20

* * * * *

Now that a generic RPC Service Interface provided by the
preferred embodiment has been described, the following

description relates to particular examples of services provided by ROS 602.

SPE Device Driver 736

5 SPE device driver 736 provides an interface between ROS 602 and SPE 503. Since SPE 503 in the preferred embodiment runs within the confines of an SPU 500, one aspect of this device driver 736 is to provide low level communications services with the SPU 500 hardware. Another aspect of SPE device driver 736
10 is to provide an RPC service interface (RSI) 736a particular to SPE 503 (this same RSI may be used to communicate with HPE 655 through HPE device driver 738).

 SPE RSI 736a and driver 736 isolates calling processes
15 within ROS 602 (or external to the ROS) from the detailed service provided by the SPE 503 by providing a set of basic interface points providing a concise function set. This has several advantages. For example, it permits a full line of scaled SPU's
500 that all provide common functionality to the outside world
20 but which may differ in detailed internal structure and architecture. SPU 500 characteristics such as the amount of memory resident in the device, processor speed, and the number

of services supported within SPU 500 may be the decision of the specific SPU manufacturer, and in any event may differ from one SPU configuration to another. To maintain compatibility, SPE device driver 736 and the RSI 736a it provides conform to a basic common RPC interface standard that "hides" differences between detailed configurations of SPUs 500 and/or the SPEs 503 they may support.

To provide for such compatibility, SPE RSI 736a in the preferred embodiment follows a simple block based standard. In the preferred embodiment, an SPE RSI 736a may be modeled after the packet interfaces for network Ethernet cards. This standard closely models the block mode interface characteristics of SPUs 500 in the preferred embodiment.

15

An SPE RSI 736a allows RPC calls from RPC manager 732 to access specific services provided by an SPE 736. To do this, SPE RSI 736a provides a set of "service notification address interfaces." These provide interfaces to individual services provided by SPE 503 to the outside world. Any calling process within ROS 602 may access these SPE-provided services by directing an RPC call to SPE RSI 736a and specifying a

20

corresponding "service notification address" in an RPC call. The specified "service notification address" causes SPE 503 to internally route an RPC call to a particular service within an SPE. The following is a listing of one example of a SPE service breakdown for which individual service notification addresses may be provided:

Channel Services Manager

Authentication Manager/Secure Communications Manager

Secure Database Manager

The Channel Services Manager is the principal service provider and access point to SPE 503 for the rest of ROS 602. Event processing, as will be discussed later, is primarily managed (from the point of view of processes outside SPE 503) by this service. The Authentication Manager/Secure Communications Manager may provide login/logout services for users of ROS 602, and provide a direct service for managing communications (typically encrypted or otherwise protected) related to component assemblies 690, VDE objects 300, etc. Requests for display of information (e.g., value remaining in a financial budget) may be provided by a direct service request to a Secure Database Manager inside SPE 503. The instances of

Authentication Manager/Secure Communications Manager and Secure Database Manager, if available at all, may provide only a subset of the information and/or capabilities available to processes operating inside SPE 503. As stated above, most (potentially all) service requests entering SPE are routed to a Channel Services Manager for processing. As will be discussed in more detail later on, most control structures and event processing logic is associated with component assemblies 690 under the management of a Channel Services Manager.

The SPE 503 must be accessed through its associated SPE driver 736 in this example. Generally, calls to SPE driver 736 are made in response to RPC calls. In this example, SPE driver RSI 736a may translate RPC calls directed to control or ascertain information about SPE driver 736 into driver calls. SPE driver RSI 736a in conjunction with driver 736 may pass RPC calls directed to SPE 503 through to the SPE.

The following table shows one example of SPE device driver 736 calls:

Entry Point	Description
SPE_info()	Returns summary information about the SPE driver 736 (and SPE 503)
SPE_initialize_interface()	Initializes SPE driver 736, and sets the default notification address for received packets.
SPE_terminate_interface()	Terminates SPE driver 736 and resets SPU 500 and the driver 736.
SPE_reset_interface()	Resets driver 736 without resetting SPU 500.
SPE_get_stats()	Return statistics for notification addresses and/or an entire driver 736.
SPE_clear_stats()	Clears statistics for a specific notification address and/or an entire driver 736.
SPE_set_notify()	Sets a notification address for a specific service ID.
SPE_get_notify()	Returns a notification address for a specific service ID.
SPE_tx_pkt()	Sends a packet (e.g., containing an RPC call) to SPE 503 for processing.

The following are more detailed examples of each of the
SPE driver calls set forth in the table above.

Example of an "SPE Information" Driver Call: SPE_info (void)

This function returns a pointer to an SPE_INFO data structure that defines the SPE device driver 736a. This data structure may provide certain information about SPE device driver 736, RSI 736a and/or SPU 500. An example of a SPE_INFO structure is described below:

10

Version Number/ID for SPE Device Driver 736

Version Number/ID for SPE Device Driver RSI 736

Pointer to name of SPE Device Driver 736

15

Pointer to ID name of SPU 500

Functionality Code Describing SPE Capabilities/functionality

20

Example of an SPE "Initialize Interface" Driver Call:

SPE_initialize_interface (int (fcn *receiver)(void))

A receiver function passed in by way of a parameter will be called for all packets received from SPE 503 unless their

destination service is over-ridden using the set_notify() call. A receiver function allows ROS 602 to specify a format for packet communication between RPC manager 732 and SPE 503.

5 This function returns "0" in the preferred embodiment if the initialization of the interface succeeds and non-zero if it fails. If the function fails, it will return a code that describes the reason for the failure as the value of the function.

10 **Example of an SPE "Terminate Interface" Driver Call:**

SPE_terminate_interface (void)

15 In the preferred embodiment, this function shuts down SPE Driver 736, clears all notification addresses, and terminates all outstanding requests between an SPE and an ROS RPC manager 732. It also resets an SPE 503 (e.g., by a warm reboot of SPU 500) after all requests are resolved.

20 Termination of driver 736 should be performed by ROS 602 when the operating system is starting to shut down. It may also be necessary to issue this call if an SPE 503 and ROS 602 get so far out of synchronization that all processing in an SPE must be reset to a known state.

Example of an SPE "Reset Interface" Driver Call:

SPE_reset_interface (void)

5 This function resets driver 736, terminates all outstanding
requests between SPE 503 and an ROS RPC manager 732, and
clears all statistics counts. It does not reset the SPU 500, but
simply restores driver 736 to a known stable state.

Example of an SPE "Get Statistics" Driver Call: SPE_get_stats

10 (long service_id)

 This function returns statistics for a specific service
notification interface or for the SPE driver 736 in general. It
returns a pointer to a static buffer that contains these statistics
or NULL if statistics are unavailable (either because an interface
15 is not initialized or because a receiver address was not specified).
An example of the SPE_STATS structure may have the following
definition:

20

Service id
packets rx
packets tx
bytes rx
bytes tx

5

errors rx
errors tx
requests tx
req tx completed
req tx cancelled
req rx
req rx completed
req rx cancelled

10

If a user specifies a service ID, statistics associated with packets sent by that service are returned. If a user specified 0 as the parameter, the total packet statistics for the interface are returned.

15

Example of an SPE "Clear Statistics" Driver Call:

SPE_clear_stats (long service_id)

20

This function clears statistics associated with the SPE service_id specified. If no service_id is specified (i.e., the caller passes in 0), global statistics will be cleared. The function returns 0 if statistics are successfully cleared or an error number if an error occurs.

Example of an SPE "Set Notification Address" Driver Call:

SPE_set_notify (long service_id, int (fcn*receiver) (void))

5 This function sets a notification address (receiver) for a specified service. If the notification address is set to NULL, SPE device driver 736 will send notifications for packets to the specified service to the default notification address.

Example of a SPE "Get Notification Address" Driver Call:

SPE_get_notify (long service_id)

10 This function returns a notification address associated with the named service or NULL if no specific notification address has been specified.

Example of an SPE "Send Packet" Driver Call:

15 send_pkt (BYTE *buffer, long size, int (far *receive) (void))

 This function sends a packet stored in buffer of "length" size. It returns 0 if the packet is sent successfully, or returns an error code associated with the failure.

20 **Redirector Service Manager 684**

 The redirector 684 is a piece of systems integration software used principally when ROS 602 is provided by "adding

on" to a pre-existing operating system or when "transparent" operation is desired for some VDE functions, as described earlier. In one embodiment the kernel 680, part of communications manager 776, file system 687, and part of API service 742 may be
5 part of a pre-existing operating system such as DOS, Windows, UNIX, Macintosh System, OS9, PSOS, OS/2, or other operating system platform. The remainder of ROS 602 subsystems shown in Figure 12 may be provided as an "add on" to a preexisting operating system. Once these ROS subsystems have been
10 supplied and "added on," the integrated whole comprises the ROS 602 shown in Figure 12.

In a scenario of this type of integration, ROS 602 will continue to be supported by a preexisting OS kernel 680, but may
15 supplement (or even substitute) many of its functions by providing additional add-on pieces such as, for example, a virtual memory manager.

Also in this integration scenario, an add-on portion of API
20 service 742 that integrates readily with a preexisting API service is provided to support VDE function calls. A pre-existing API service integrated with an add-on portion supports an enhanced

set of operating system calls including both calls to VDE functions 604 and calls to functions 606 other than VDE functions (see Figure 11A). The add-on portion of API service 742 may translate VDE function calls into RPC calls for routing
5 by RPC manager 732.

ROS 602 may use a standard communications manager 776 provided by the preexisting operating system, or it may provide "add ons" and/or substitutions to it that may be readily
10 integrated into it. Redirector 684 may provide this integration function.

This leaves a requirement for ROS 602 to integrate with a preexisting file system 687. Redirector 684 provides this
15 integration function.

In this integration scenario, file system 687 of the preexisting operating system is used for all accesses to secondary storage. However, VDE objects 300 may be stored on secondary
20 storage in the form of external object repository 728, file system 687, or remotely accessible through communications manager 776. When object switch 734 wants to access external object

repository 728, it makes a request to the object repository manager 770 that then routes the request to object repository 728 or to redirector 692 (which in turn accesses the object in file system 687).

5

Generally, redirector 684 maps VDE object repository 728 content into preexisting calls to file system 687. The redirector 684 provides preexisting OS level information about a VDE object 300, including mapping the object into a preexisting OS's name space. This permits seamless access to VDE protected content using "normal" file system 687 access techniques provided by a preexisting operating system.

10

In the integration scenarios discussed above, each preexisting target OS file system 687 has different interface requirements by which the redirector mechanism 684 may be "hooked." In general, since all commercially viable operating systems today provide support for network based volumes, file systems, and other devices (e.g., printers, modems, etc.), the redirector 684 may use low level network and file access "hooks" to integrate with a preexisting operating system. "Add-ons" for

15

20

supporting VDE functions 602 may use these existing hooks to integrate with a preexisting operating system.

User Notification Service Manager 740

5 User Notification Service Manager 740 and associated user notification exception interface ("pop up") 686 provides ROS 602 with an enhanced ability to communicate with a user of electronic appliance 600. Not all applications 608 may be designed to respond to messaging from ROS 602 passed through API 682,
10 and it may in any event be important or desirable to give ROS 602 the ability to communicate with a user no matter what state an application is in. User notification services manager 740 and interface 686 provides ROS 602 with a mechanism to communicate directly with a user, instead of or in addition to
15 passing a return call through API 682 and an application 608. This is similar, for example, to the ability of the Windows operating system to display a user message in a "dialog box" that displays "on top of" a running application irrespective of the state of the application.

20

 The User Notification 686 block in the preferred embodiment may be implemented as application code. The

implementation of interface 740a is preferably built over notification service manager 740, which may be implemented as part of API service manager 742. Notification services manager 740 in the preferred embodiment provides notification support to dispatch specific notifications to an appropriate user process via the appropriate API return, or by another path. This mechanism permits notifications to be routed to any authorized process—not just back to a process that specified a notification mechanism.

10 **API Service Manager 742**

The preferred embodiment API Service Manager 742 is implemented as a service interface to the RPC service manager 732. All user API requests are built on top of this basic interface. The API Service Manager 742 preferably provides a service instance for each running user application 608.

Most RPC calls to ROS functions supported by API Service Manager 742 in the preferred embodiment may map directly to service calls with some additional parameter checking. This mechanism permits developers to create their own extended API libraries with additional or changed functionality.

In the scenario discussed above in which ROS 602 is formed by integrating "add ons" with a preexisting operating system, the API service 742 code may be shared (e.g., resident in a host environment like a Windows DLL), or it may be directly
5 linked with an applications's code— depending on an application programmer's implementation decision, and/or the type of electronic appliance 600. The Notification Service Manager 740 may be implemented within API 682. These components interface with Notification Service component 686 to provide a
10 transition between system and user space.

Secure Database Service Manager ("SDSM") 744

There are at least two ways that may be used for managing secure database 600:

- 15 C a commercial database approach, and
- C a site record number approach.

Which way is chosen may be based on the number of records that a VDE site stores in the secure database 610.

20 The commercial database approach uses a commercial database to store securely wrapped records in a commercial database. This way may be preferred when there are a large

number of records that are stored in the secure database 610. This way provides high speed access, efficient updates, and easy integration to host systems at the cost of resource usage (most commercial database managers use many system resources).

5

The site record number approach uses a "site record number" ("SRN") to locate records in the system. This scheme is preferred when the number of records stored in the secure database 610 is small and is not expected to change extensively over time. This way provides efficient resources use with limited update capabilities. SRNs permit further grouping of similar data records to speed access and increase performance.

Since VDE 100 is highly scalable, different electronic appliances 600 may suggest one way more than the other. For example, in limited environments like a set top, PDA, or other low end electronic appliance, the SRN scheme may be preferred because it limits the amount of resources (memory and processor) required. When VDE is deployed on more capable electronic appliances 600 such as desktop computers, servers and at clearinghouses, the commercial database scheme may be more

20

desirable because it provides high performance in environments where resources are not limited.

5 One difference between the database records in the two approaches is whether the records are specified using a full VDE ID or SRN. To translate between the two schemes, a SRN reference may be replaced with a VDE ID database reference wherever it occurs. Similarly, VDE IDs that are used as indices or references to other items may be replaced by the appropriate
10 SRN value.

 In the preferred embodiment, a commercially available database manager 730 is used to maintain secure database 610. ROS 602 interacts with commercial database manager 730
15 through a database driver 750 and a database interface 748. The database interface 748 between ROS 602 and external, third party database vendors' commercial database manager 730 may be an open standard to permit any database vendor to implement a VDE compliant database driver 750 for their products.

20

 ROS 602 may encrypt each secure database 610 record so that a VDE-provided security layer is "on top of" the commercial

database structure. In other words, SPE 736 may write secure records in sizes and formats that may be stored within a database record structure supported by commercial database manager 730. Commercial database manager 730 may then be used to organize, store, and retrieve the records. In some embodiments, it may be desirable to use a proprietary and/or newly created database manager in place of commercial database manager 730. However, the use of commercial database manager 730 may provide certain advantages such as, for example, an ability to use already existing database management product(s).

The Secure Database Services Manager ("SDSM") 744 makes calls to an underlying commercial database manager 730 to obtain, modify, and store records in secure database 610. In the preferred embodiment, "SDSM" 744 provides a layer "on top of" the structure of commercial database manager 730. For example, all VDE-secure information is sent to commercial database manager 730 in encrypted form. SDSM 744 in conjunction with cache manager 746 and database interface 748 may provide record management, caching (using cache manager 746), and related services (on top of) commercial database systems 730 and/or record managers. Database Interface 748

and cache manager 746 in the preferred embodiment do not present their own RSI, but rather the RPC Manager 732 communicates to them through the Secure Database Manager RSI 744a.

5

Name Services Manager 752

The Name Services Manager 752 supports three subservices: user name services, host name services, and services name services. User name services provides mapping and lookup between user name and user ID numbers, and may also support other aspects of user-based resource and information security. Host name services provides mapping and lookup between the names (and other information, such as for example address, communications connection/routing information, etc.) of other processing resources (e.g., other host electronic appliances) and VDE node IDs. Services name service provides a mapping and lookup between services names and other pertinent information such as connection information (e.g., remotely available service routing and contact information) and service IDs.

20

Name Services Manager 752 in the preferred embodiment is connected to External Services Manager 772 so that it may provide external service routing information directly to the external services manager. Name services manager 752 is also connected to secure database manager 744 to permit the name services manager 752 to access name services records stored within secure database 610.

External Services Manager 772 & Services Transport Layer 786

The External Services Manager 772 provides protocol support capabilities to interface to external service providers. External services manager 772 may, for example, obtain external service routing information from name services manager 752, and then initiate contact to a particular external service (e.g., another VDE electronic appliance 600, a financial clearinghouse, etc.) through communications manager 776. External services manager 772 uses a service transport layer 786 to supply communications protocols and other information necessary to provide communications.

There are several important examples of the use of External Services Manager 772. Some VDE objects may have

some or all of their content stored at an Object Repository 728 on an electronic appliance 600 other than the one operated by a user who has, or wishes to obtain, some usage rights to such VDE objects. In this case, External Services Manager 772 may
5 manage a connection to the electronic appliance 600 where the VDE objects desired (or their content) is stored. In addition, file system 687 may be a network file system (e.g., Netware, LANtastic, NFS, etc.) that allows access to VDE objects using redirecter 684. Object switch 734 also supports this capability.

10

If External Services Manager 772 is used to access VDE objects, many different techniques are possible. For example, the VDE objects may be formatted for use with the World Wide Web protocols (HTML, HTTP, and URL) by including relevant
15 headers, content tags, host ID to URL conversion (e.g., using Name Services Manager 752) and an HTTP-aware instance of Services Transport Layer 786.

In other examples, External Services Manager 772 may be
20 used to locate, connect to, and utilize remote event processing services; smart agent execution services (both to provide these services and locate them); certification services for Public Keys;

remote Name Services; and other remote functions either supported by ROS 602 RPCs (e.g., have RSIs), or using protocols supported by Services Transport Layer 786.

5 **Outgoing Administrative Object Manager 754**

Outgoing administrative object manager 754 receives administrative objects from object switch 734, object repository manager 770 or other source for transmission to another VDE electronic appliance. Outgoing administrative object manager 10 754 takes care of sending the outgoing object to its proper destination. Outgoing administrative object manager 754 may obtain routing information from name services manager 752, and may use communications service 776 to send the object. Outgoing administrative object manager 754 typically maintains 15 records (in concert with SPE 503) in secure database 610 (e.g., shipping table 444) that reflect when objects have been successfully transmitted, when an object should be transmitted, and other information related to transmission of objects.

20 **Incoming Administrative Object Manager 756**

Incoming administrative object manager 756 receives administrative objects from other VDE electronic appliances 600

via communications manager 776. It may route the object to object repository manager 770, object switch 734 or other destination. Incoming administrative object manager 756 typically maintains records (in concert with SPE 503) in secure database 610 (e.g., receiving table 446) that record which objects have been received, objects expected for receipt, and other information related to received and/or expected objects.

Object Repository Manager 770

Object repository manager 770 is a form of database or file manager. It manages the storage of VDE objects 300 in object repository 728, in a database, or in the file system 687. Object repository manager 770 may also provide the ability to browse and/or search information related to objects (such as summaries of content, abstracts, reviewers' commentary, schedules, promotional materials, etc.), for example, by using INFORMATION methods associated with VDE objects 300.

Object Submittal Manager 774

Object submittal manager 774 in the preferred embodiment provides an interface between an application 608 and object switch 734, and thus may be considered in some

respects part of API 682. For example, it may allow a user application to create new VDE objects 300. It may also allow incoming/outgoing administrative object managers 756, 754 to create VDE objects 300 (administrative objects).

5

Figure 12A shows how object submittal manager 774 may be used to communicate with a user of electronic appliance 600 to help to create a new VDE object 300. Figure 12A shows that object creation may occur in two stages in the preferred embodiment: an object definition stage 1220, and an object creation stage 1230. The role of object submittal manager 774 is indicated by the two different "user input" depictions (774(1), 774(2)) shown in Figure 12A.

10

15

In one of its roles or instances, object submittal manager 774 provides a user interface 774a that allows the user to create an object configuration file 1240 specifying certain characteristics of a VDE object 300 to be created. This user interface 774a may, for example, allow the user to specify that she wants to create an object, allow the user to designate the content the object will contain, and allow the user to specify certain other aspects of the

20

information to be contained within the object (e.g., rules and control information, identifying information, etc.).

5 Part of the object definition task 1220 in the preferred embodiment may be to analyze the content or other information to be placed within an object. Object definition user interface 774a may issue calls to object switch 734 to analyze "content" or other information that is to be included within the object to be created in order to define or organize the content into "atomic
10 elements" specified by the user. As explained elsewhere herein, such "atomic element" organizations might, for example, break up the content into paragraphs, pages or other subdivisions specified by the user, and might be explicit (e.g., inserting a control character between each "atomic element") or implicit.
15 Object switch 734 may receive static and dynamic content (e.g., by way of time independent stream interface 762 and real time stream interface 760), and is capable of accessing and retrieving stored content or other information stored within file system 687.

20 The result of object definition 1240 may be an object configuration file 1240 specifying certain parameters relating to the object to be created. Such parameters may include, for

example, map tables, key management specifications, and event method parameters. The object construction stage 1230 may take the object configuration file 1240 and the information or content to be included within the new object as input, construct
5 an object based on these inputs, and store the object within object repository 728.

Object construction stage 1230 may use information in object configuration file 1240 to assemble or modify a container.
10 This process typically involves communicating a series of events to SPE 503 to create one or more PERCs 808, public headers, private headers, and to encrypt content, all for storage in the new object 300 (or within secure database 610 within records associated with the new object).

15 The object configuration file 1240 may be passed to container manager 764 within object switch 734. Container manager 734 is responsible for constructing an object 300 based on the object configuration file 1240 and further user input. The
20 user may interact with the object construction 1230 through another instance 774(2) of object submittal manager 774. In this further user interaction provided by object submittal manager

774, the user may specify permissions, rules and/or control information to be applied to or associated with the new object 300. To specify permissions, rules and control information, object submittal manager 774 and/or container manager 764 within
5 object switch 734 generally will, as mentioned above, need to issue calls to SPE 503 (e.g., through gateway 734) to cause the SPE to obtain appropriate information from secure database 610, generate appropriate database items, and store the database items into the secure database 610 and/or provide them in
10 encrypted, protected form to the object switch for incorporation into the object. Such information provided by SPE 503 may include, in addition to encrypted content or other information, one or more PERCs 808, one or more method cores 1000', one or more load modules 1100, one or more data structures such as
15 UDEs 1200 and/or MDEs 1202, along with various key blocks, tags, public and private headers, and error correction information.

The container manager 764 may, in cooperation with SPE
20 503, construct an object container 302 based at least in part on parameters about new object content or other information as specified by object configuration file 1240. Container manager

764 may then insert into the container 302 the content or other information (as encrypted by SPE 503) to be included in the new object. Container manager 764 may also insert appropriate permissions, rules and/or control information into the container 302 (this permissions, rules and/or control information may be defined at least in part by user interaction through object submittal manager 774, and may be processed at least in part by SPE 503 to create secure data control structures). Container manager 764 may then write the new object to object repository 687, and the user or the electronic appliance may "register" the new object by including appropriate information within secure database 610.

Communications Subsystem 776

Communications subsystem 776, as discussed above, may be a conventional communications service that provides a network manager 780 and a mail gateway manager 782. Mail filters 784 may be provided to automatically route objects 300 and other VDE information to/from the outside world.

Communications subsystem 776 may support a real time content feed 684 from a cable, satellite or other telecommunications link.

Secure Processing Environment 503

As discussed above in connection with Figure 12, each electronic appliance 600 in the preferred embodiment includes one or more SPEs 503 and/or one or more HPEs 655. These
5 secure processing environments each provide a protected execution space for performing tasks in a secure manner. They may fulfill service requests passed to them by ROS 602, and they may themselves generate service requests to be satisfied by other services within ROS 602 or by services provided by another VDE
10 electronic appliance 600 or computer.

In the preferred embodiment, an SPE 503 is supported by the hardware resources of an SPU 500. An HPE 655 may be supported by general purpose processor resources and rely on
15 software techniques for security/protection. HPE 655 thus gives ROS 602 the capability of assembling and executing certain component assemblies 690 on a general purpose CPU such as a microcomputer, minicomputer, mainframe computer or supercomputer processor. In the preferred embodiment, the
20 overall software architecture of an SPE 503 may be the same as the software architecture of an HPE 655. An HPE 655 can "emulate" SPE 503 and associated SPU 500, i.e., each may

include services and resources needed to support an identical set of service requests from ROS 602 (although ROS 602 may be restricted from sending to an HPE certain highly secure tasks to be executed only within an SPU 500).

5

Some electronic appliance 600 configurations might include both an SPE 503 and an HPE 655. For example, the HPE 655 could perform tasks that need lesser (or no) security protections, and the SPE 503 could perform all tasks that require a high
10 degree of security. This ability to provide serial or concurrent processing using multiple SPE and/or HPE arrangements provides additional flexibility, and may overcome limitations imposed by limited resources that can practically or cost-effectively be provided within an SPU 500. The cooperation of
15 an SPE 503 and an HPE 655 may, in a particular application, lead to a more efficient and cost effective but nevertheless secure overall processing environment for supporting and providing the secure processing required by VDE 100. As one example, an
20 HPE 655 could provide overall processing for allowing a user to manipulate released object 300 'contents,' but use SPE 503 to access the secure object and release the information from the object.

Figure 13 shows the software architecture of the preferred embodiment Secure Processing Environment (SPE) 503. This architecture may also apply to the preferred embodiment Host Processing Environment (HPE) 655. "Protected Processing Environment" ("PPE") 650 may refer generally to SPE 503 and/or HPE 655. Hereinafter, unless context indicates otherwise, references to any of "PPE 650," "HPE 655" and "SPE 503" may refer to each of them.

As shown in Figure 13, SPE 503 (PPE 650) includes the following service managers/major functional blocks in the preferred embodiment:

Kernel/Dispatcher 552

C Channel Services Manager 562

C SPE RPC Manager 550

C Time Base Manager 554

C Encryption/Decryption Manager 556

C Key and Tag Manager 558

C Summary Services Manager 560

C Authentication Manager/Service Communications
Manager 564

C Random Value Generator 565

C Secure Database Manager 566

C Other Services 592.

5 Each of the major functional blocks of PPE 650 is discussed
in detail below.

I. SPE Kernel/Dispatcher 552

10 The Kernel/Dispatcher 552 provides an operating system
"kernel" that runs on and manages the hardware resources of
SPU 500. This operating system "kernel" 552 provides a self-
contained operating system for SPU 500; it is also a part of
overall ROS 602 (which may include multiple OS kernels,
including one for each SPE and HPE ROS is
controlling/managing). Kernel/dispatcher 552 provides SPU task
15 and memory management, supports internal SPU hardware
interrupts, provides certain "low level services," manages "DTD"
data structures, and manages the SPU bus interface unit 530.
Kernel/dispatcher 552 also includes a load module execution
manager 568 that can load programs into secure execution space
20 for execution by SPU 500.

In the preferred embodiment, kernel/dispatcher 552 may include the following software/functional components:

load module execution manager 568

task manager 576

5 memory manager 578

virtual memory manager 580

"low level" services manager 582

internal interrupt handlers 584

BIU handler 586 (may not be present in HPE 655)

10 Service interrupt queues 588

DTD Interpreter 590.

At least parts of the kernel/dispatcher 552 are preferably stored in SPU firmware loaded into SPU ROM 532. An example of a memory map of SPU ROM 532 is shown in Figure 14A. This memory map shows the various components of kernel/dispatcher 552 (as well as the other SPE services shown in Figure 13) residing in SPU ROM 532a and/or EEPROM 532b. The Figure 14B example of an NVRAM 534b memory map shows the task manager 576 and other information loaded into NVRAM.

15

20

One of the functions performed by kernel/dispatcher 552 is to receive RPC calls from ROS RPC manager 732. As explained above, the ROS Kernel RPC manager 732 can route RPC calls to the SPE 503 (via SPE Device Driver 736 and its associated RSI 736a) for action by the SPE. The SPE kernel/dispatcher 552 receives these calls and either handles them or passes them on to SPE RPC manager 550 for routing internally to SPE 503. SPE 503 based processes can also generate RPC requests. Some of these requests can be processed internally by the SPE 503. If they are not internally serviceable, they may be passed out of the SPE 503 through SPE kernel/dispatcher 552 to ROS RPC manager 732 for routing to services external to SPE 503.

A. Kernel/Dispatcher Task Management

Kernel/dispatcher task manager 576 schedules and oversees tasks executing within SPE 503 (PPE 650). SPE 503 supports many types of tasks. A "channel" (a special type of task that controls execution of component assemblies 690 in the preferred embodiment) is treated by task manager 576 as one type of task. Tasks are submitted to the task manager 576 for execution. Task manager 576 in turn ensures that the SPE 503/SPU 500 resources necessary to execute the tasks are made

available, and then arranges for the SPU microprocessor 520 to execute the task.

Any call to kernel/dispatcher 552 gives the kernel an
5 opportunity to take control of SPE 503 and to change the task or
tasks that are currently executing. Thus, in the preferred
embodiment kernel/dispatcher task manager 576 may (in
conjunction with virtual memory manager 580 and/or memory
manager 578) "swap out" of the execution space any or all of the
10 tasks that are currently active, and "swap in" additional or
different tasks.

SPE tasking managed by task manager 576 may be either
"single tasking" (meaning that only one task may be active at a
15 time) or "multi-tasking" (meaning that multiple tasks may be
active at once). SPE 503 may support single tasking or multi-
tasking in the preferred embodiment. For example, "high end"
implementations of SPE 503 (e.g., in server devices) should
preferably include multi-tasking with "preemptive scheduling."
20 Desktop applications may be able to use a simpler SPE 503,
although they may still require concurrent execution of several
tasks. Set top applications may be able to use a relatively simple

implementation of SPE 503, supporting execution of only one task at a time. For example, a typical set top implementation of SPU 500 may perform simple metering, budgeting and billing using subsets of VDE methods combined into single "aggregate" load modules to permit the various methods to execute in a single tasking environment. However, an execution environment that supports only single tasking may limit use with more complex control structures. Such single tasking versions of SPE 503 trade flexibility in the number and types of metering and budgeting operations for smaller run time RAM size requirements. Such implementations of SPE 503 may (depending upon memory limitations) also be limited to metering a single object 300 at a time. Of course, variations or combinations are possible to increase capabilities beyond a simple single tasking environment without incurring the additional cost required to support "full multitasking."

In the preferred embodiment, each task in SPE 503 is represented by a "swap block," which may be considered a "task" in a traditional multitasking architecture. A "swap block" in the preferred embodiment is a bookkeeping mechanism used by task manager 576 to keep track of tasks and subtasks. It corresponds

to a chunk of code and associated references that "fits" within the secure execution environment provided by SPU 500. In the preferred embodiment, it contains a list of references to shared data elements (e.g., load modules 1100 and UDEs 1200), private data elements (e.g., method data and local stack), and swapped process "context" information (e.g., the register set for the process when it is not processing). Figure 14C shows an example of a snapshot of SPU RAM 532 storing several examples of "swap blocks" for a number of different tasks/methods such as a "channel" task, a "control" task, an "event" task, a "meter" task, a "budget" task, and a "billing" task. Depending on the size of SPU RAM 532, "swap blocks" may be swapped out of RAM and stored temporarily on secondary storage 652 until their execution can be continued. Thus, SPE 503 operating in a multi-tasking mode may have one or more tasks "sleeping." In the simplest form, this involves an active task that is currently processing, and another task (e.g., a control task under which the active task may be running) that is "sleeping" and is "swapped out" of active execution space. Kernel/dispatcher 522 may swap out tasks at any time.

Task manager 576 may use Memory Manager 578 to help it perform this swapping operation. Tasks may be swapped out of the secure execution space by reading appropriate information from RAM and other storage internal to SPU 500, for example, and writing a "swap block" to secondary storage 652. Kernel 552 may swap a task back into the secure execution space by reading the swap block from secondary storage 652 and writing the appropriate information back into SPU RAM 532. Because secondary storage 652 is not secure, SPE 503 must encrypt and cryptographically seal (e.g., using a one-way hash function initialized with a secret value known only inside the SPU 500) each swap block before it writes it to secondary storage. The SPE 503 must decrypt and verify the cryptographic seal for each swap block read from secondary storage 652 before the swap block can be returned to the secure execution space for further execution.

Loading a "swap block" into SPU memory may require one or more "paging operations" to possibly first save, and then flush, any "dirty pages" (i.e., pages changed by SPE 503) associated with the previously loaded swap blocks, and to load all required pages for the new swap block context.

Kernel/dispatcher 522 preferably manages the "swap blocks" using service interrupt queues 588. These service interrupt queues 588 allow kernel/dispatcher 552 to track tasks (swap blocks) and their status (running, "swapped out," or "asleep"). The kernel/dispatcher 552 in the preferred embodiment may maintain the following service interrupt queues 588 to help it manage the "swap blocks":

5 RUN queue
 SWAP queue
10 SLEEP queue.

Those tasks that are completely loaded in the execution space and are waiting for and/or using execution cycles from microprocessor 502 are in the RUN queue. Those tasks that are "swapped" out (e.g., because they are waiting for other swappable components to be loaded) are referenced in the SWAP queue.

15 Those tasks that are "asleep" (e.g., because they are "blocked" on some resource other than processor cycles or are not needed at the moment) are referenced in the SLEEP queue.

Kernel/dispatcher task manager 576 may, for example, transition tasks between the RUN and SWAP queues based upon a "round-robin" scheduling algorithm that selects the next task waiting for service, swaps in any pieces that need to be paged in, and

20

executes the task. Kernel/dispatcher 552 task manager 576 may transition tasks between the SLEEP queue and the "awake" (i.e., RUN or SWAP) queues as needed.

5 When two or more tasks try to write to the same data structure in a multi-tasking environment, a situation exists that may result in "deadly embrace" or "task starvation." A "multi-threaded" tasking arrangement may be used to prevent "deadly embrace" or "task starvation" from happening. The preferred
10 embodiment kernel/dispatcher 552 may support "single threaded" or "multi-threaded" tasking.

 In single threaded applications, the kernel/dispatcher 552 "locks" individual data structures as they are loaded. Once
15 locked, no other SPE 503 task may load them and will "block" waiting for the data structure to become available. Using a single threaded SPE 503 may, as a practical matter, limit the ability of outside vendors to create load modules 1100 since there can be no assurance that they will not cause a "deadly embrace"
20 with other VDE processes about which outside vendors may know little or nothing. Moreover, the context swapping of a partially updated record might destroy the integrity of the

system, permit unmetered use, and/or lead to deadlock. In addition, such "locking" imposes a potentially indeterminate delay into a typically time critical process, may limit SPE 503 throughput, and may increase overhead.

5

This issue notwithstanding, there are other significant processing issues related to building single-threaded versions of SPE 503 that may limit its usefulness or capabilities under some circumstances. For example, multiple concurrently executing tasks may not be able to process using the same often-needed data structure in a single-threaded SPE 503. This may effectively limit the number of concurrent tasks to one.

10

Additionally, single-threadedness may eliminate the capability of producing accurate summary budgets based on a number of concurrent tasks since multiple concurrent tasks may not be able to effectively share the same summary budget data structure.

15

Single-threadedness may also eliminate the capability to support audit processing concurrently with other processing. For example, real-time feed processing might have to be shut down in order to audit budgets and meters associated with the monitoring process.

20

One way to provide a more workable "single-threaded" capability is for kernel/dispatcher 552 to use virtual page handling algorithms to track "dirty pages" as data areas are written to. The "dirty pages" can be swapped in and out with the task swap block as part of local data associated with the swap block. When a task exits, the "dirty pages" can be merged with the current data structure (possibly updated by another task for SPU 500) using a three-way merge algorithm (i.e., merging the original data structure, the current data structure, and the "dirty pages" to form a new current data structure). During the update process, the data structure can be locked as the pages are compared and swapped. Even though this virtual paging solution might be workable for allowing single threading in some applications, the vendor limitations mentioned above may limit the use of such single threaded implementations in some cases to dedicated hardware. Any implementation that supports multiple users (e.g., "smart home" set tops, many desk tops and certain PDA applications, etc.) may hit limitations of a single threaded device in certain circumstances.

20

It is preferable when these limitations are unacceptable to use a full "multi-threaded" data structure write capabilities. For

example, a type of "two-phase commit" processing of the type used by database vendors may be used to allow data structure sharing between processes. To implement this "two-phase commit" process, each swap block may contain page addresses for additional memory blocks that will be used to store changed information. A change page is a local copy of a piece of a data element that has been written by an SPE process. The changed page(s) references associated with a specific data structure are stored locally to the swap block in the preferred embodiment.

For example, SPE 503 may support two (change pages) per data structure. This limit is easily alterable by changing the size of the swap block structure and allowing the update algorithm to process all of the changed pages. The "commit" process can be invoked when a swap block that references changed pages is about to be discarded. The commit process takes the original data element that was originally loaded (e.g., UDE_0), the current data element (e.g., UDE_n) and the changed pages, and merges them to create a new copy of the data element (e.g., UDE_{n+1}). Differences can be resolved by the DTD interpreter 590 using a DTD for the data element. The original data element is

discarded (e.g., as determined by its DTD use count) if no other swap block references it.

B. Kernel/Dispatcher Memory Management

5 Memory manager 578 and virtual memory manager 580 in the preferred embodiment manage ROM 532 and RAM 534 memory within SPU 500 in the preferred embodiment. Virtual memory manager 580 provides a fully "virtual" memory system to increase the amount of "virtual" RAM available in the SPE
10 secure execution space beyond the amount of physical RAM 534a provided by SPU 500. Memory manager 578 manages the memory in the secure execution space, controlling how it is accessed, allocated and deallocated. SPU MMU 540, if present, supports virtual memory manager 580 and memory manager 578
15 in the preferred embodiment. In some "minimal" configurations of SPU 500 there may be no virtual memory capability and all memory management functions will be handled by memory manager 578. Memory management can also be used to help enforce the security provided by SPE 503. In some classes of
20 SPUs 500, for example, the kernel memory manager 578 may use hardware memory management unit (MMU) 540 to provide page level protection within the SPU 500. Such a hardware-based

memory management system provides an effective mechanism for protecting VDE component assemblies 690 from compromise by "rogue" load modules.

5 In addition, memory management provided by memory manager 578 operating at least in part based on hardware-based MMU 540 may securely implement and enforce a memory architecture providing multiple protection domains. In such an architecture, memory is divided into a plurality of domains that
10 are largely isolated from each other and share only specific memory areas under the control of the memory manager 578. An executing process cannot access memory outside its domain and can only communicate with other processes through services provided by and mediated by privileged kernel/dispatcher
15 software 552 within the SPU 500. Such an architecture is more secure if it is enforced at least in part by hardware within MMU 540 that cannot be modified by any software-based process executing within SPU 500.

20 In the preferred embodiment, access to services implemented in the ROM 532 and to physical resources such as NVRAM 534b and RTC 528 are mediated by the combination of

privileged kernel/dispatcher software 552 and hardware within MMU 540. ROM 532 and RTC 528 requests are privileged in order to protect access to critical system component routines (e.g., RTC 528).

5

Memory manager 578 is responsible for allocating and deallocating memory; supervising sharing of memory resources between processes; and enforcing memory access/use restriction. The SPE kernel/dispatcher memory manager 578 typically initially allocates all memory to kernel 552, and may be configured to permit only process-level access to pages as they are loaded by a specific process. In one example SPE operating system configuration, memory manager 578 allocates memory using a simplified allocation mechanism. A list of each memory page accessible in SPE 503 may be represented using a bit map allocation vector, for example. In a memory block, a group of contiguous memory pages may start at a specific page number. The size of the block is measured by the number of memory pages it spans. Memory allocation may be recorded by setting/clearing the appropriate bits in the allocation vector.

20

To assist in memory management functions, a "dope vector" may be prepended to a memory block. The "dope vector" may contain information allowing memory manager 578 to manage that memory block. In its simplest form, a memory block may be structured as a "dope vector" followed by the actual memory area of the block. This "dope vector" may include the block number, support for dynamic paging of data elements, and a marker to detect memory overwrites. Memory manager 578 may track memory blocks by their block number and convert the block number to an address before use. All accesses to the memory area can be automatically offset by the size of the "dope vector" during conversion from a block memory to a physical address. "Dope vectors" can also be used by virtual memory manager 580 to help manage virtual memory.

The ROM 532 memory management task performed by memory manager 578 is relatively simple in the preferred embodiment. All ROM 532 pages may be flagged as "read only" and as "non-pagable." EEPROM 532B memory management may be slightly more complex since the "burn count" for each EEPROM page may need to be retained. SPU EEPROM 532B may need to be protected from all uncontrolled writes to conserve

the limited writable lifetime of certain types of this memory. Furthermore, EEPROM pages may in some cases not be the same size as memory management address pages.

5 SPU NVRAM 534b is preferably battery backed RAM that has a few access restrictions. Memory manager 578 can ensure control structures that must be located in NVRAM 534b are not relocated during "garbage collection" processes. As discussed above, memory manager 578 (and MMU 540 if present) may
10 protect NVRAM 534b and RAM 534a at a page level to prevent tampering by other processes.

 Virtual memory manager 580 provides paging for programs and data between SPU external memory and SPU
15 internal RAM 534a. It is likely that data structures and executable processes will exceed the limits of any SPU 500 internal memory. For example, PERCs 808 and other fundamental control structures may be fairly large, and "bit map meters" may be, or become, very large. This eventuality may be
20 addressed in two ways:

- (1) subdividing load modules 1100; and
- (2) supporting virtual paging.

Load modules 1100 can be "subdivided" in that in many instances they can be broken up into separate components only a subset of which must be loaded for execution. Load modules 1100 are the smallest pagable executable element in this example.

5 Such load modules 1100 can be broken up into separate components (e.g., executable code and plural data description blocks), only one of which must be loaded for simple load modules to execute. This structure permits a load module 1100 to initially load only the executable code and to load the data description
10 blocks into the other system pages on a demand basis. Many load modules 1100 that have executable sections that are too large to fit into SPU 500 can be restructured into two or more smaller independent load modules. Large load modules may be manually "split" into multiple load modules that are "chained"
15 together using explicit load module references.

Although "demand paging" can be used to relax some of these restrictions, the preferred embodiment uses virtual paging to manage large data structures and executables. Virtual
20 Memory Manager 580 "swaps" information (e.g., executable code and/or data structures) into and out of SPU RAM 534a, and provides other related virtual memory management services to

allow a full virtual memory management capability. Virtual memory management may be important to allow limited resource SPU 500 configurations to execute large and/or multiple tasks.

5 **C. SPE Load Module Execution Manager 568**

 The SPE (HPE) load module execution manager ("LMEM") 568 loads executables into the memory managed by memory manager 578 and executes them. LMEM 568 provides mechanisms for tracking load modules that are currently loaded inside the protected execution environment. LMEM 568 also provides access to basic load modules and code fragments stored within, and thus always available to, SPE 503. LMEM 568 may be called, for example, by load modules 1100 that want to execute other load modules.

15 In the preferred embodiment, the load module execution manager 568 includes a load module executor ("program loader") 570, one or more internal load modules 572, and library routines 574. Load module executor 570 loads executables into memory (e.g., after receiving a memory allocation from memory manager 578) for execution. Internal load module library 572 may provide a set of commonly used basic load modules 1100 (stored in ROM

532 or NVRAM 534b, for example). Library routines 574 may provide a set of commonly used code fragments/routines (e.g., bootstrap routines) for execution by SPE 503.

5 Library routines 574 may provide a standard set of library functions in ROM 532. A standard list of such library functions along with their entry points and parameters may be used. Load modules 1100 may call these routines (e.g., using an interrupt reserved for this purpose). Library calls may reduce the size of
10 load modules by moving commonly used code into a central location and permitting a higher degree of code reuse. All load modules 1100 for use by SPE 503 are preferably referenced by a load module execution manager 568 that maintains and scans a list of available load modules and selects the appropriate load
15 module for execution. If the load module is not present within SPE 503, the task is "slept" and LMEM 568 may request that the load module 1100 be loaded from secondary storage 562. This request may be in the form of an RPC call to secure database manager 566 to retrieve the load module and associated data
20 structures, and a call to encrypt/decrypt manager 556 to decrypt the load module before storing it in memory allocated by memory manager 578.

In somewhat more detail, the preferred embodiment executes a load module 1100 by passing the load module execution manager 568 the name (e.g., VDE ID) of the desired load module 1100. LMEM 568 first searches the list of "in
5 memory" and "built-in" load modules 572. If it cannot find the desired load module 1100 in the list, it requests a copy from the secure database 610 by issuing an RPC request that may be handled by ROS secure database manager 744 shown in Figure 12. Load module execution manager 568 may then request
10 memory manager 578 to allocate a memory page to store the load module 1100. The load module execution manager 568 may copy the load module into that memory page, and queue the page for decryption and security checks by encrypt/decrypt manager 556 and key and tag manager 558. Once the page is decrypted and
15 checked, the load module execution manager 568 checks the validation tag and inserts the load module into the list of paged in modules and returns the page address to the caller. The caller may then call the load module 1100 directly or allow the load module execution module 570 to make the call for it.

20
Figure 15a shows a detailed example of a possible format for a channel header 596 and a channel 594 containing channel

detail records 594(1), 594(2), . . . 594(N). Channel header 596 may include a channel ID field 597(1), a user ID field 597(2), an object ID field 597(3), a field containing a reference or other identification to a "right" (i.e., a collection of events supported by methods referenced in a PERC 808 and/or "user rights table" 464) 597(4), an event queue 597(5), and one or more fields 598 that cross-reference particular event codes with channel detail records ("CDRs"). Channel header 596 may also include a "jump" or reference table 599 that permits addressing of elements within an associated component assembly or assemblies 690. Each CDR 594(1), . . . 594(N) corresponds to a specific event (event code) to which channel 594 may respond. In the preferred embodiment, these CDRs may include explicitly and/or by reference each method core 1000N (or fragment thereof), load module 1100 and data structure(s), (e.g., URT, UDE 1200 and/or MDE 1202) 15 needed to process the corresponding event. In the preferred embodiment, one or more of the CDRs (e.g., 594(1)) may reference a control method and a URT 464 as a data structure.

20 Figure 15b shows an example of program control steps performed by SPE 503 to "open" a channel 594 in the preferred embodiment. In the preferred embodiment, a channel 594

provides event processing for a particular VDE object 300, a particular authorized user, and a particular "right" (i.e., type of event). These three parameters may be passed to SPE 503. Part of SPE kernel/dispatcher 552 executing within a "channel 0" constructed by low level services 582 during a "bootstrap" routine may respond initially to this "open channel" event by allocating an available channel supported by the processing resources of SPE 503 (block 1125). This "channel 0" "open channel" task may then issue a series of requests to secure database manager 566 to obtain the "blueprint" for constructing one or more component assemblies 690 to be associated with channel 594 (block 1127). In the preferred embodiment, this "blueprint" may comprise a PERC 808 and/or URT 464. In may be obtained by using the "Object, User, Right" parameters passed to the "open channel" routine to "chain" together object registration table 460 records, user/object table 462 records, URT 464 records, and PERC 808 records. This "open channel" task may preferably place calls to key and tag manager 558 to validate and correlate the tags associated with these various records to ensure that they are authentic and match. The preferred embodiment process then may write appropriate information to channel header 596 (block 1129). Such information may include, for example, User ID,

Object ID, and a reference to the "right" that the channel will process. The preferred embodiment process may next use the "blueprint" to access (e.g, the secure database manager 566 and/or from load module execution manager library(ies) 568) the appropriate "control method" that may be used to, in effect, supervise execution of all of the other methods 1000 within the channel 594 (block 1131). The process may next "bind" this control method to the channel (block 1133), which step may include binding information from a URT 464 into the channel as a data structure for the control method. The process may then pass an "initialization" event into channel 594 (block 1135). This "initialization" event may be created by the channel services manager 562, the process that issued the original call requesting a service being fulfilled by the channel being built, or the control method just bound to the channel could itself possibly generate an initialization event which it would in effect pass to itself.

In response to this "initialization" event, the control method may construct the channel detail records 594(1), . . . 594(N) used to handle further events other than the "initialization" event. The control method executing "within" the channel may access the various components it needs to construct

associated component assemblies 690 based on the "blueprint"
accessed at step 1127 (block 1137). Each of these components is
bound to the channel 594 (block 1139) by constructing an
associated channel detail record specifying the method core(s)
5 1000N, load module(s) 1100, and associated data structure(s) (e.g.,
UDE(s) 1200 and/or MDE(s) 1202) needed to respond to the
event. The number of channel detail records will depend on the
number of events that can be serviced by the "right," as specified
by the "blueprint" (i.e., URT 464). During this process, the
10 control method will construct "swap blocks" to, in effect, set up all
required tasks and obtain necessary memory allocations from
kernel 562. The control method will, as necessary, issue calls to
secure database manager 566 to retrieve necessary components
from secure database 610, issue calls to encrypt/decrypt manager
15 556 to decrypt retrieved encrypted information, and issue calls to
key and tag manager 558 to ensure that all retrieved components
are validated. Each of the various component assemblies 690 so
constructed are "bound" to the channel through the channel
header event code/pointer records 598 and by constructing
20 appropriate swap blocks referenced by channel detail records
594(1), . . . 594(N). When this process is complete, the channel
594 has been completely constructed and is ready to respond to

further events. As a last step, the Figure 15b process may, if desired, deallocate the "initialization" event task in order to free up resources.

5 Once a channel 594 has been constructed in this fashion, it will respond to events as they arrive. Channel services manager 562 is responsible for dispatching events to channel 594. Each time a new event arrives (e.g., via an RPC call), channel services manager 562 examines the event to determine whether a channel
10 already exists that is capable of processing it. If a channel does exist, then the channel services manager 562 passes the event to that channel. To process the event, it may be necessary for task manager 576 to "swap in" certain "swappable blocks" defined by the channel detail records as active tasks. In this way,
15 executable component assemblies 690 formed during the channel open process shown in Figure 15b are placed into active secure execution space, the particular component assembly that is activated being selected in response to the received event code. The activated task will then perform its desired function in
20 response to the event.

To destroy a channel, the various swap blocks defined by the channel detail records are destroyed, the identification information in the channel header 596 is wiped clean, and the channel is made available for re-allocation by the "channel 0" "open channel" task.

D. SPE Interrupt Handlers 584

As shown in Figure 13, kernel/dispatcher 552 also provides internal interrupt handler(s) 584. These help to manage the resources of SPU 500. SPU 500 preferably executes in either "interrupt" or "polling" mode for all significant components. In polling mode, kernel/dispatcher 552 may poll each of the sections/circuits within SPU 500 and emulate an interrupt for them. The following interrupts are preferably supported by SPU 500 in the preferred embodiment:

- C "tick" of RTC 528
- C interrupt from bus interface 530
- C power fail interrupt
- C watchdog timer interrupt
- 20 C interrupt from encrypt/decrypt engine 522
- C memory interrupt (e.g., from MMU 540).

When an interrupt occurs, an interrupt controller within microprocessor 520 may cause the microprocessor to begin executing an appropriate interrupt handler. An interrupt handler is a piece of software/firmware provided by kernel/dispatcher 552 that allows microprocessor 520 to perform particular functions upon the occurrence of an interrupt. The interrupts may be "vectored" so that different interrupt sources may effectively cause different interrupt handlers to be executed.

A "timer tick" interrupt is generated when the real-time RTC 528 "pulses." The timer tick interrupt is processed by a timer tick interrupt handler to calculate internal device date/time and to generate timer events for channel processing.

The bus interface unit 530 may generate a series of interrupts. In the preferred embodiment, bus interface 530, modeled after a USART, generates interrupts for various conditions (e.g., "receive buffer full," "transmitter buffer empty," and "status word change"). Kernel/dispatcher 552 services the transmitter buffer empty interrupt by sending the next character from the transmit queue to the bus interface 530. Kernel/dispatcher interrupt handler 584 may service the received

buffer full interrupt by reading a character, appending it to the current buffer, and processing the buffer based on the state of the service engine for the bus interface 530. Kernel/dispatcher 552 preferably processes a status word change interrupt and
5 addresses the appropriate send/receive buffers accordingly.

SPU 500 generates a power fail interrupt when it detects an imminent power fail condition. This may require immediate action to prevent loss of information. For example, in the
10 preferred embodiment, a power fail interrupt moves all recently written information (i.e., "dirty pages") into non-volatile NVRAM 534b, marks all swap blocks as "swapped out," and sets the appropriate power fail flag to facilitate recovery processing. Kernel/dispatcher 552 may then periodically poll the "power fail
15 bit" in a status word until the data is cleared or the power is removed completely.

SPU 500 in the example includes a conventional watchdog timer that generates watchdog timer interrupts on a regular
20 basis. A watchdog timer interrupt handler performs internal device checks to ensure that tampering is not occurring. The internal clocks of the watchdog timer and RTC 528 are compared

to ensure SPU 500 is not being paused or probed, and other internal checks on the operation of SPU 500 are made to detect tampering.

5 The encryption/decryption engine 522 generates an interrupt when a block of data has been processed. The kernel interrupt handler 584 adjusts the processing status of the block being encrypted or decrypted, and passes the block to the next stage of processing. The next block scheduled for the encryption
10 service then has its key moved into the encrypt/decrypt engine 522, and the next cryptographic process started.

 A memory management unit 540 interrupt is generated when a task attempts to access memory outside the areas
15 assigned to it. A memory management interrupt handler traps the request, and takes the necessary action (e.g., by initiating a control transfer to memory manager 578 and/or virtual memory manager 580). Generally, the task will be failed, a page fault exception will be generated, or appropriate virtual memory
20 page(s) will be paged in.

E. Kernel/Dispatcher Low Level Services 582

Low level services 582 in the preferred embodiment provide "low level" functions. These functions in the preferred embodiment may include, for example, power-on initialization, device POST, and failure recovery routines. Low level services 582 may also in the preferred embodiment provide (either by themselves or in combination with authentication manager/service communications manager 564) download response-challenge and authentication communication protocols, and may provide for certain low level management of SPU 500 memory devices such as EEPROM and FLASH memory (either alone or in combination with memory manager 578 and/or virtual memory manager 580).

F. Kernel/Dispatcher BIU handler 586

BIU handler 586 in the preferred embodiment manages the bus interface unit 530 (if present). It may, for example, maintain read and write buffers for the BIU 530, provide BIU startup initialization, etc.

G. Kernel/Dispatcher DTD Interpreter 590

DTD interpreter 590 in the preferred embodiment handles data formatting issues. For example, the DTD interpreter 590 may automatically open data structures such as UDEs 1200 based on formatting instructions contained within DTDs.

The SPE kernel/dispatcher 552 discussed above supports all of the other services provided by SPE 503. Those other services are discussed below.

II. SPU Channel Services Manager 562

"Channels" are the basic task processing mechanism of SPE 503 (HPE 655) in the preferred embodiment. ROS 602 provides an event-driven interface for "methods." A "channel" allows component assemblies 690 to service events. A "channel" is a conduit for passing "events" from services supported by SPE 503 (HPE 655) to the various methods and load modules that have been specified to process these events, and also supports the assembly of component assemblies 690 and interaction between component assemblies. In more detail, "channel" 594 is a data structure maintained by channel manager 593 that "binds" together one or more load modules 1100 and data structures (e.g.,

UDEs 1200 and/or MDEs 1202) into a component assembly 690.

Channel services manager 562 causes load module execution manager 569 to load the component assembly 690 for execution, and may also be responsible for passing events into the channel 594 for response by a component assembly 690. In the preferred embodiment, event processing is handled as a message to the channel service manager 562.

Figure 15 is a diagram showing how the preferred embodiment channel services manager 562 constructs a "channel" 594, and also shows the relationship between the channel and component assemblies 690. Briefly, the SPE channel manager 562 establishes a "channel" 594 and an associated "channel header" 596. The channel 594 and its header 596 comprise a data structure that "binds" or references elements of one or more component assemblies 690. Thus, the channel 594 is the mechanism in the preferred embodiment that collects together or assembles the elements shown in Figure 11E into a component assembly 690 that may be used for event processing.

The channel 594 is set up by the channel services manager 562 in response to the occurrence of an event. Once the channel

is created, the channel services manager 562 may issue function calls to load module execution manager 568 based on the channel 594. The load module execution manager 568 loads the load modules 1100 referenced by a channel 594, and requests
5 execution services by the kernel/dispatcher task manager 576. The kernel/dispatcher 552 treats the event processing request as a task, and executes it by executing the code within the load modules 1100 referenced by the channel.

10 The channel services manager 562 may be passed an identification of the event (e.g., the "event code"). The channel services manager 562 parses one or more method cores 1000' that are part of the component assembly(ies) 690 the channel services manager is to assemble. It performs this parsing to determine
15 which method(s) and data structure(s) are invoked by the type of event. Channel manager 562 then issues calls (e.g., to secure database manager 566) to obtain the methods and data structure(s) needed to build the component assembly 690. These called-for method(s) and data structure(s) (e.g., load modules
20 1100, UDEs 1200 and/or MDEs 1202) are each decrypted using encrypt/decrypt manager 556 (if necessary), and are then each validated using key and tag manager 558. Channel manager 562

constructs any necessary "jump table" references to, in effect,
"link" or "bind" the elements into a single cohesive executable so
the load module(s) can reference data structures and any other
load module(s) in the component assembly. Channel manager
5 562 may then issue calls to LMEM 568 to load the executable as
an active task.

Figure 15 shows that a channel 594 may reference another
channel. An arbitrary number of channels 594 may be created by
10 channel manager 594 to interact with one another.

"Channel header" 596 in the preferred embodiment is (or
references) the data structure(s) and associated control
program(s) that queues events from channel event sources,
15 processes these events, and releases the appropriate tasks
specified in the "channel detail record" for processing. A "channel
detail record" in the preferred embodiment links an event to a
"swap block" (i.e., task) associated with that event. The "swap
block" may reference one or more load modules 1100, UDEs 1200
20 and private data areas required to properly process the event.
One swap block and a corresponding channel detail item is
created for each different event the channel can respond to.

In the preferred embodiment, Channel Services Manager 562 may support the following (internal) calls to support the creation and maintenance of channels 562:

5

Call Name	Source	Description
"Write Event"	Write	Writes an event to the channel for response by the channel. The <u>Write Event</u> call thus permit the caller to insert an event into the event queue associated with the channel. The event will be processed in turn by the channel 594.
"Bind Item"	Ioctl	Binds an item to a channel with the appropriate processing algorithm. The <u>Bind Item</u> call permits the caller to bind a VDE item ID to a channel (e.g., to create one or more swap blocks associated with a channel). This call may manipulate the contents of individual swap blocks.
"Unbind Item"	Ioctl	Unbinds an item from a channel with the appropriate processing algorithm. The <u>Unbind Item</u> call permits the caller to break the binding of an item to a swap block. This call may manipulate the contents of individual swap blocks.

10

SPE RPC Manager 550

As described in connection with Figure 12, the architecture of ROS 602 is based on remote procedure calls in the preferred embodiment. ROS 602 includes an RPC Manager 732 that passes RPC calls between services each of which present an RPC service interface ("RSI") to the RPC manager. In the preferred embodiment, SPE 503 (HPE 655) is also built around the same RPC concept. The SPE 503 (HPE 655) may include a number of internal modular service providers each presenting an RSI to an RPC manager 550 internal to the SPE (HPE). These internal service providers may communicate with each other and/or with ROS RPC manager 732 (and thus, with any other service provided by ROS 602 and with external services), using RPC service requests.

RPC manager 550 within SPE 503 (HPE 655) is not the same as RPC manager 732 shown in Figure 12, but it performs a similar function within the SPE (HPE): it receives RPC requests and passes them to the RSI presented by the service that is to fulfill the request. In the preferred embodiment, requests are passed between ROS RPC manager 732 and the outside world (i.e., SPE device driver 736) via the SPE (HPE)

Kernel/Dispatcher 552. Kernel/Dispatcher 552 may be able to service certain RPC requests itself, but in general it passes received requests to RPC manager 550 for routing to the appropriate service internal to the SPE (HPE). In an alternate embodiment, requests may be passed directly between the HPE, SPE, API, Notification interface, and other external services instead of routing them through the ROS RPC manager 732. The decision on which embodiment to use is part of the scalability of the system; some embodiments are more efficient than others under various traffic loads and system configurations. Responses by the services (and additional service requests they may themselves generate) are provided to RPC Manager 550 for routing to other service(s) internal or external to SPE 503 (HPE 655).

SPE RPC Manager 550 and its integrated service manager uses two tables to dispatch remote procedure calls: an RPC services table, and an optional RPC dispatch table. The RPC services table describes where requests for specific services are to be routed for processing. In the preferred embodiment, this table is constructed in SPU RAM 534a or NVRAM 534b, and lists each RPC service "registered" within SPU 500. Each row of the RPC

services table contains a service ID, its location and address, and a control byte. In simple implementations, the control byte indicates only that the service is provided internally or externally. In more complex implementations, the control byte can indicate an instance of the service (e.g., each service may have multiple "instances" in a multi-tasking environment). ROS RPC manager 732 and SPE 503 may have symmetric copies of the RPC services table in the preferred embodiment. If an RPC service is not found in the RPC services table, SPE 503 may either reject it or pass it to ROS RPC manager 732 for service.

The SPE RPC manager 550 accepts the request from the RPC service table and processes that request in accordance with the internal priorities associated with the specific service. In SPE 503, the RPC service table is extended by an RPC dispatch table. The preferred embodiment RPC dispatch table is organized as a list of Load Module references for each RPC service supported internally by SPE 503. Each row in the table contains a load module ID that services the call, a control byte that indicates whether the call can be made from an external caller, and whether the load module needed to service the call is permanently resident in SPU 500. The RPC dispatch table may

be constructed in SPU ROM 532 (or EEPROM) when SPU firmware 508 is loaded into the SPU 500. If the RPC dispatch table is in EEPROM, it flexibly allows for updates to the services without load module location and version control issues.

5

In the preferred embodiment, SPE RPC manager 550 first references a service request against the RPC service table to determine the location of the service manager that may service the request. The RPC manager 550 then routes the service request to the appropriate service manager for action. Service requests are handled by the service manager within the SPE 503 using the RPC dispatch table to dispatch the request. Once the RPC manager 550 locates the service reference in the RPC dispatch table, the load module that services the request is called and loaded using the load module execution manager 568. The load module execution manager 568 passes control to the requested load module after performing all required context configuration, or if necessary may first issue a request to load it from the external management files 610.

20

SPU Time Base Manager 554

The time base manager 554 supports calls that relate to the real time clock ("RTC") 528. In the preferred embodiment, the time base manager 554 is always loaded and ready to respond to time based requests.

The table below lists examples of basic calls that may be supported by the time base manager 554:

Call Name	Description
Independent requests	
Get Time	Returns the time (local, GMT, or ticks).
Set time	Sets the time in the RTC 528. Access to this command may be restricted to a VDE administrator.
Adjust time	Changes the time in the RTC 528. Access to this command may be restricted to a VDE administrator.
Set Time Parameter	Set GMT / local time conversion and the current and allowable magnitude of user adjustments to RTC 528 time.
Channel Services Manager Requests	
Bind Time	Bind timer services to a channel as an event source.
Unbind Time	Unbind timer services from a channel as an event source.

10

Call Name	Description
Set Alarm	Sets an alarm notification for a specific time. The user will be notified by an alarm event at the time of the alarm. Parameters to this request determine the event, frequency, and requested processing for the alarm.
Clear Alarm	Cancels a requested alarm notification.

5 SPU Encryption/Decryption Manager 556

The Encryption/Decryption Manager 556 supports calls to the various encryption/decryption techniques supported by SPE 503/HPE 655. It may be supported by a hardware-based encryption/decryption engine 522 within SPU 500. Those encryption/decryption technologies not supported by SPU encrypt/decrypt engine 522 may be provided by encrypt/decrypt manager 556 in software. The primary bulk encryption/decryption load modules preferably are loaded at all times, and the load modules necessary for other algorithms are preferably paged in as needed. Thus, if the primary bulk encryption/decryption algorithm is DES, only the DES load modules need be permanently resident in the RAM 534a of SPE 503/HPE 655.

The following are examples of RPC calls supported by
Encrypt/Decrypt Manager 556 in the preferred embodiment:

5	Call Name	Description
	PK Encrypt	Encrypt a block using a PK (public key) algorithm.
	PK Decrypt	Decrypt a block using a PK algorithm.
	DES Encrypt	Encrypt a block using DES.
10	DES Decrypt	Decrypt a block using DES.
	RC-4 Encrypt	Encrypt a block using the RC-4 (or other bulk encryption) algorithm.
	RC-4 Decrypt	Decrypt a block using the RC-4 (or other bulk encryption) algorithm.
15	Initialize DES Instance	Initialize DES instance to be used.
	Initialize RC-4 Instance	Initialize RC-4 instance to be used.
	Initialize MD5 Instance	Initialize MD5 instance to be used.
25	Process MD5 Block	Process MD5 block.

The call parameters passed may include the key to be used;
 mode (encryption or decryption); any needed Initialization
 Vectors; the desired cryptographic operating (e.g., type of
 feedback); the identification of the cryptographic instance to be
 5 used; and the start address, destination address, and length of
 the block to be encrypted or decrypted.

SPU Key and Tag Manager 558

The SPU Key and Tag Manager 558 supports calls for key
 10 storage, key and management file tag look up, key convolution,
 and the generation of random keys, tags, and transaction
 numbers.

The following table shows an example of a list of SPE/HPE
 15 key and tag manager service 558 calls:

Call Name	Description
Key Requests	
Get Key	Retrieve the requested key.
20 Set Key	Set (store) the specified key.
Generate Key	Generate a key (pair) for a specified algorithm.
Generate Convolution Key	Generate a key using a specified convolution algorithm and algorithm parameter block.
25 Get Convolution Algorithm	Return the currently set (default) convolution parameters for a specific convolution algorithm.

	Set Convolution Algorithm	Sets the convolution parameters for a specific convolution algorithm (calling routine must provide tag to read returned contents).
	Tag Requests	
	Get Tag	Get the validation (or other) tag for a specific VDE It ID.
5	Set Tag	Set the validation (or other) tag for a specific VDE It ID to a known value.
	Calculate Hash Block Number	Calculate the "hash block number" for a specific VDE Item ID.
	Set Hash Parameters	Set the hash parameters and hash algorithm. Force resynchronization of the hash table.
	Get Hash Parameters	Retrieve the current hash parameters/algorithm.
10	Synchronize Management Files	Synchronize the management files and rebuild the h block tables based on information found in the tables Reserved for VDE administrator.

Keys and tags may be securely generated within SPE 503 (HPE 655) in the preferred embodiment. The key generation algorithm is typically specific to each type of encryption supported. The generated keys may be checked for cryptographic weakness before they are used. A request for Key and Tag Manager 558 to generate a key, tag and/or transaction number preferably takes a length as its input parameter. It generates a random number (or other appropriate key value) of the requested length as its output.

The key and tag manager 558 may support calls to retrieve specific keys from the key storage areas in SPU 500 and any keys

stored external to the SPU. The basic format of the calls is to request keys by key type and key number. Many of the keys are periodically updated through contact with the VDE administrator, and are kept within SPU 500 in NVRAM 534b or
5 EEPROM because these memories are secure, updatable and non-volatile.

SPE 503/HPE 655 may support both Public Key type keys and Bulk Encryption type keys. The public key (PK) encryption
10 type keys stored by SPU 500 and managed by key and tag manager 558 may include, for example, a device public key, a device private key, a PK certificate, and a public key for the certificate. Generally, public keys and certificates can be stored externally in non-secured memory if desired, but the device
15 private key and the public key for the certificate should only be stored internally in an SPU 500 EEPROM or NVRAM 534b. Some of the types of bulk encryption keys used by the SPU 500 may include, for example, general-purpose bulk encryption keys, administrative object private header keys, stationary object
20 private header keys, traveling object private header keys, download/initialization keys, backup keys, trail keys, and management file keys.

As discussed above, preferred embodiment Key and Tag Manager 558 supports requests to adjust or convolute keys to make new keys that are produced in a deterministic way dependent on site and/or time, for example. Key convolution is an algorithmic process that acts on a key and some set of input parameter(s) to yield a new key. It can be used, for example, to increase the number of keys available for use without incurring additional key storage space. It may also be used, for example, as a process to "age" keys by incorporating the value of real-time RTC 528 as parameters. It can be used to make keys site specific by incorporating aspects of the site ID as parameters.

Key and Tag Manager 558 also provides services relating to tag generation and management. In the preferred embodiment, transaction and access tags are preferably stored by SPE 503 (HPE 655) in protected memory (e.g., within the NVRAM 534b of SPU 500). These tags may be generated by key and tag manager 558. They are used to, for example, check access rights to, validate and correlate data elements. For example, they may be used to ensure components of the secured data structures are not tampered with outside of the SPU 500.

Key and tag manager 558 may also support a trail transaction tag and a communications transaction tag.

SPU Summary Services Manager 560

5 SPE 503 maintains an audit trail in reprogrammable non-volatile memory within the SPU 500 and/or in secure database 610. This audit trail may consist of an audit summary of budget activity for financial purposes, and a security summary of SPU use. When a request is made to the SPU, it logs the request as
10 having occurred and then notes whether the request succeeded or failed. All successful requests may be summed and stored by type in the SPU 500. Failure information, including the elements listed below, may be saved along with details of the failure:

15

Control Information Retained in an SPE on Access Failures	
Object ID	
User ID	
Type of failure	
Time of failure	

20

 This information may be analyzed to detect cracking attempts or
25 to determine patterns of usage outside expected (and budgeted)

norms. The audit trail histories in the SPU 500 may be retained until the audit is reported to the appropriate parties. This will allow both legitimate failure analysis and attempts to cryptanalyze the SPU to be noted.

5

Summary services manager 560 may store and maintain this internal summary audit information. This audit information can be used to check for security breaches or other aspects of the operation of SPE 503. The event summaries may be maintained, analyzed and used by SPE 503 (HPE 655) or a VDE administrator to determine and potentially limit abuse of electronic appliance 600. In the preferred embodiment, such parameters may be stored in secure memory (e.g., within the NVRAM 534b of SPU 500).

10
15

There are two basic structures for which summary services are used in the preferred embodiment. One (the "event summary data structure") is VDE administrator specific and keeps track of events. The event summary structure may be maintained and audited during periodic contact with VDE administrators. The other is used by VDE administrators and/or distributors for overall budget. A VDE administrator may register for event

20

summaries and an overall budget summary at the time an electronic appliance 600 is initialized. The overall budget summary may be reported to and used by a VDE administrator in determining distribution of consumed budget (for example) in the case of corruption of secure management files 610.

Participants that receive appropriate permissions can register their processes (e.g., specific budgets) with summary services manager 560, which may then reserve protected memory space (e.g., within NVRAM 534b) and keep desired use and/or access parameters. Access to and modification of each summary can be controlled by its own access tag.

The following table shows an example of a list of PPE summary service manager 560 service calls:

Call Name	Description
Create summary info	Create a summary service if the user has a "ticket" that permits her to request this service.
Get value	Return the current value of the summary service. The caller must present an appropriate tag (and/or "ticket") to use this request.
Set value	Set the value of a summary service.

Increment	Increment the specified summary service(e.g., a scalar meter summary data area). The caller must present an appropriate tag (and/or "ticket") to use this request.
Destroy	Destroy the specified summary service if the user has a tag and/or "ticket" that permits them to request this service.

5 In the preferred embodiment, the event summary data structure uses a fixed event number to index into a look up table. The look up table contains a value that can be configured as a counter or a counter plus limit. Counter mode may be used by VDE administrators to determine device usage. The limit mode
10 may be used to limit tampering and attempts to misuse the electronic appliance 600. Exceeding a limit will result in SPE 503 (HPE 655) refusing to service user requests until it is reset by a VDE administrator. Calls to the system wide event summary process may preferably be built into all load modules
15 that process the events that are of interest.

The following table shows examples of events that may be separately metered by the preferred embodiment event summary data structure:

Event Type	
Successful Events	Initialization completed successfully.
	User authentication accepted.
	Communications established.
	Channel loads set for specified values.
	Decryption completed.
	Key information updated.
	New budget created or existing budget updated.
	New billing information generated or existing billing updated.
	New meter set up or existing meter updated.
	New PERC created or existing PERC updated.
	New objects registered.
	Administrative objects successfully processed.
	Audit processed successfully.
	All other events.
Failed Events	Initialization failed.
	Authentication failed.
	Communication attempt failed.
	Request to load a channel failed.
	Validation attempt unsuccessful.
	Link to subsidiary item failed correlation tag match.

5

	Authorization attempt failed.
	Decryption attempt failed.
	Available budget insufficient to complete requested procedure.
	Audit did not occur.
	Administrative object did not process correctly.
	Other failed events.

Another, "overall currency budget" summary data structure maintained by the preferred embodiment summary services manager 560 allows registration of VDE electronic appliance 600. The first entry is used for an overall currency budget consumed value, and is registered by the VDE administrator that first initializes SPE 503 (HPE 655). Certain currency consuming load modules and audit load modules that complete the auditing process for consumed currency budget may call the summary services manager 560 to update the currency consumed value. Special authorized load modules may have access to the overall currency summary, while additional summaries can be registered for by individual providers.

15

SPE Authentication Manager/Service Communications Manager 564

The Authentication Manager/Service Communications Manager 564 supports calls for user password validation and "ticket" generation and validation. It may also support secure communications between SPE 503 and an external node or device (e.g., a VDE administrator or distributor). It may support the following examples of authentication-related service requests in the preferred embodiment:

Call Name	Description
User Services	
Create User	Creates a new user and stores Name Services Records (NSRs) for use by the Name Services Manager 752.
Authenticate User	Authenticates a user for use of the system. This request lets the caller authenticate as a specific user ID. Group membership is also authenticated by this request. The authentication returns a "ticket" for the user.
Delete User	Deletes a user's NSR and related records.
Ticket Services	
Generate Ticket	Generates a "ticket" for use of one or more services.
Authenticate Ticket	Authenticates a "ticket."

Not included in the table above are calls to the secure communications service. The secure communications service provided by manager 564 may provide (e.g., in conjunction with low-level services manager 582 if desired) secure communications based on a public key (or others) challenge-response protocol. This protocol is discussed in further detail elsewhere in this document. Tickets identify users with respect to the electronic appliance 600 in the case where the appliance may be used by multiple users. Tickets may be requested by and returned to VDE software applications through a ticket-granting protocol (e.g., Kerberos). VDE components may require tickets to be presented in order to authorize particular services.

15

SPE Secure Database Manager 566

Secure database manager 566 retrieves, maintains and stores secure database records within secure database 610 on memory external to SPE 503. Many of these secure database files 610 are in encrypted form. All secure information retrieved by secure database manager 566 therefore must be decrypted by encrypt/decrypt manager 556 before use. Secure information (e.g., records of use) produced by SPE 503 (HPE 655) which must

20

be stored external to the secure execution environment are also encrypted by encrypt/decrypt manager 556 before they are stored via secure database manager 566 in a secure database file 610.

5 For each VDE item loaded into SPE 503, Secure Database manager 566 in the preferred embodiment may search a master list for the VDE item ID, and then check the corresponding transaction tag against the one in the item to ensure that the item provided is the current item. Secure Database Manager 566
10 may maintain list of VDE item ID and transaction tags in a "hash structure" that can be paged into SPE 503 to quickly locate the appropriate VDE item ID. In smaller systems, a look up table approach may be used. In either case, the list should be structured as a pagable structure that allows VDE item ID to be
15 located quickly.

 The "hash based" approach may be used to sort the list into "hash buckets" that may then be accessed to provide more rapid and efficient location of items in the list. In the "hash based"
20 approach, the VDE item IDs are "hashed" through a subset of the full item ID and organized as pages of the "hashed" table. Each "hashed" page may contain the rest of the VDE item ID and

current transaction tag for each item associated with that page.

The "hash" table page number may be derived from the components of the VDE item ID, such as distribution ID, item ID, site ID, user ID, transaction tag, creator ID, type and/or version.

5 The hashing algorithm (both the algorithm itself and the parameters to be hashed) may be configurable by a VDE administrator on a site by site basis to provide optimum hash page use. An example of a hash page structure appears below:

10

15

20

25

Field
Hash Page Header
Distributor ID
Item ID
Site ID
User ID
Transaction Tag
Hash Page Entry
Creator ID
Item ID
Type
Version
Transaction Tag

In this example, each hash page may contain all of the VDE item IDs and transaction tags for items that have identical distributor ID, item ID, and user ID fields (site ID will be fixed for a given electronic appliance 600). These four pieces of
5 information may thus be used as hash algorithm parameters.

The "hash" pages may themselves be frequently updated, and should carry transaction tags that are checked each time a "hash" page is loaded. The transaction tag may also be updated
10 each time a "hash" page is written out.

As an alternative to the hash-based approach, if the number of updatable items is kept small (such as in a dedicated consumer electronic appliance 600), then assigning each
15 updatable item a unique sequential site record number as part of its VDE item ID may allow a look up table approach to be used. Only a small number of bytes of transaction tag are needed per item, and a table transaction tag for all frequently updatable items can be kept in protected memory such as SPU NVRAM
20 534b.

Random Value Generator Manager 565

Random Value Generator Manager 565 may generate random values. If a hardware-based SPU random value generator 542 is present, the Random Value Generator Manager 565 may use it to assist in generating random values.

Other SPE RPC Services 592

Other authorized RPC services may be included in SPU 500 by having them "register" themselves in the RPC Services Table and adding their entries to the RPC Dispatch Table. For example, one or more component assemblies 690 may be used to provide additional services as an integral part of SPE 503 and its associated operating system. Requests to services not registered in these tables will be passed out of SPE 503 (HPE 655) for external servicing.

SPE 503 Performance Considerations

Performance of SPE 503 (HPE 655) is a function of:

- C complexity of the component assemblies used
- 20 C number of simultaneous component assembly operations
- C amount of internal SPU memory available
- C speed of algorithm for block encryption/decryption

The complexity of component assembly processes along with the number of simultaneous component assembly processes is perhaps the primary factor in determining performance. These factors combine to determine the amount of code and data and must be resident in SPU 500 at any one time (the minimum device size) and thus the number of device size "chunks" the processes must be broken down into. Segmentation inherently increases run time size over simpler models. Of course, feature limited versions of SPU 500 may be implemented using significantly smaller amounts of RAM 534. "Aggregate" load modules as described above may remove flexibility in configuring VDE structures and also further limit the ability of participants to individually update otherwise separated elements, but may result in a smaller minimum device size. A very simple metering version of SPU 500 can be constructed to operate with minimal device resources.

The amount of RAM 534 internal to SPU 500 has more impact on the performance of the SPE 503 than perhaps any other aspect of the SPU. The flexible nature of VDE processes allows use of a large number of load modules, methods and user data elements. It is impractical to store more than a small

number of these items in ROM 532 within SPU 500. Most of the code and data structures needed to support a specific VDE process will need to be dynamically loaded into the SPU 500 for the specific VDE process when the process is invoked. The operating system within SPU 500 then may page in the necessary VDE items to perform the process. The amount of RAM 534 within SPU 500 will directly determine how large any single VDE load module plus its required data can be, as well as the number of page swaps that will be necessary to run a VDE process. The SPU I/O speed, encryption/decryption speed, and the amount of internal memory 532, 534 will directly affect the number of page swaps required in the device. Insecure external memory may reduce the wait time for swapped pages to be loaded into SPU 500, but will still incur substantial encryption/decryption penalty for each page.

In order to maintain security, SPE 503 must encrypt and cryptographically seal each block being swapped out to a storage device external to a supporting SPU 500, and must similarly decrypt, verify the cryptographic seal for, and validate each block as it is swapped into SPU 500. Thus, the data movement and

encryption/decryption overhead for each swap block has a very large impact on SPE performance.

5 The performance of an SPU microprocessor 520 may not significantly impact the performance of the SPE 503 it supports if the processor is not responsible for moving data through the encrypt/decrypt engine 522.

VDE Secure Database 610

10 VDE 100 stores separately deliverable VDE elements in a secure (e.g., encrypted) database 610 distributed to each VDE electronic appliance 610. The database 610 in the preferred embodiment may store and/or manage three basic classes of VDE items:

15 VDE objects,
 VDE process elements, and
 VDE data structures.

20 The following table lists examples of some of the VDE items stored in or managed by information stored in secure database 610:

5

Class		Brief Description
Objects	Content Objects	Provide a container for content.
	Administrative Objects	Provide a container for information used to keep VDE 100 operating.
	Traveling Objects	Provide a container for content and control information.
	Smart Objects	Provide a container for (user-specified) processes and data.
Process Elements	Method Cores	Provide a mechanism to relate events to control mechanisms and permissions.
	Load Modules ("LMs")	Secure (tamper-resistant) executable code.
	Method Data Elements ("MDEs")	Independently deliverable data structures used to control/customize methods.
Data Structures	Permissions Records ("PERCs")	Permissions to use objects; "blueprints" to build component assemblies.
	User Data Elements ("UDEs")	Basic data structure for storing information used in conjunction with load modules.
	Administrative Data Structures	Used by VDE node to maintain administrative information.

Each electronic appliance 600 may have an instance of a secure database 610 that securely maintains the VDE items. Figure 16 shows one example of a secure database 610. The secure database 610 shown in this example includes the following

5 VDE-protected items:

- C one or more PERCs 808;
- C methods 1000 (including static and dynamic method "cores" 1000, and MDEs 1202);
- C Static UDEs 1200a and Dynamic UDEs 1200b; and
- 10 C load modules 1100.

Secure database 610 may also include the following additional data structures used and maintained for administrative purposes:

- 15 C an "object registry" 450 that references an object storage 728 containing one or more VDE objects;
- C name service records 452; and
- C configuration records 454 (including site configuration records 456 and user configuration records 458).
- 20

Secure database 610 in the preferred embodiment does not include VDE objects 300, but rather references VDE objects stored, for example, on file system 687 and/or in a separate object repository 728. Nevertheless, an appropriate "starting point" for understanding VDE-protected information may be a discussion of VDE objects 300.

VDE Objects 300

VDE 100 provides a media independent container model for encapsulating content. Figure 17 shows an example of a "logical" structure or format 800 for an object 300 provided by the preferred embodiment.

The generalized "logical object" structure 800 shown in Figure 17 used by the preferred embodiment supports digital content delivery over any currently used media. "Logical object" in the preferred embodiment may refer collectively to: content; computer software and/or methods used to manipulate, record, and/or otherwise control use of said content; and permissions, limitations, administrative control information and/or requirements applicable to said content, and/or said computer software and/or methods. Logical objects may or may not be

stored, and may or may not be present in, or accessible to, any given electronic appliance 600. The content portion of a logical object may be organized as information contained in, not contained in, or partially contained in one or more objects.

5

Briefly, the Figure 17 "logical object" structure 800 in the preferred embodiment includes a public header 802, private header 804, a "private body" 806 containing one or more methods 1000, permissions record(s) (PERC) 808 (which may include one or more key blocks 810), and one or more data blocks or areas 812. These elements may be "packaged" within a "container" 302. This generalized, logical object structure 800 is used in the preferred embodiment for different types of VDE objects 300 categorized by the type and location of their content.

10

15

The "container" concept is a convenient metaphor used to give a name to the collection of elements required to make use of content or to perform an administrative-type activity. Container 302 typically includes identifying information, control structures and content (e.g., a property or administrative data). The term "container" is often (e.g., Bento/OpenDoc and OLE) used to describe a collection of information stored on a computer system's

20

secondary storage system(s) or accessible to a computer system over a communications network on a "server's" secondary storage system. The "container" 302 provided by the preferred embodiment is not so limited or restricted. In VDE 100, there is
5 no requirement that this information is stored together, received at the same time, updated at the same time, used for only a single object, or be owned by the same entity. Rather, in VDE 100 the container concept is extended and generalized to include real-time content and/or online interactive content passed to an
10 electronic appliance over a cable, by broadcast, or communicated by other electronic communication means.

Thus, the "complete" VDE container 302 or logical object structure 800 may not exist at the user's location (or any other
15 location, for that matter) at any one time. The "logical object" may exist over a particular period of time (or periods of time), rather than all at once. This concept includes the notion of a "virtual container" where important container elements may exist either as a plurality of locations and/or over a sequence of
20 time periods (which may or may not overlap). Of course, VDE 100 containers can also be stored with all required control structures and content together. This represents a continuum:

from all content and control structures present in a single container, to no locally accessible content or container specific control structures.

5 Although at least some of the data representing the object is typically encrypted and thus its structure is not discernible, within a PPE 650 the object may be viewed logically as a "container" 302 because its structure and components are automatically and transparently decrypted.

10

 A container model merges well with the event-driven processes and ROS 602 provided by the preferred embodiment. Under this model, content is easily subdivided into small, easily manageable pieces, but is stored so that it maintains the structural richness inherent in unencrypted content. An object oriented container model (such as Bento/OpenDoc or OLE) also provides many of the necessary "hooks" for inserting the necessary operating system integration components, and for defining the various content specific methods.

20

 In more detail, the logical object structure 800 provided by the preferred embodiment includes a public (or unencrypted)

header 802 that identifies the object and may also identify one or more owners of rights in the object and/or one or more distributors of the object. Private (or encrypted) header 804 may include a part or all of the information in the public header and
5 further, in the preferred embodiment, will include additional data for validating and identifying the object 300 when a user attempts to register as a user of the object with a service clearinghouse, VDE administrator, or an SPU 500.

Alternatively, information identifying one or more rights owners
10 and/or distributors of the object may be located in encrypted form within encrypted header 804, along with any of said additional validating and identifying data.

Each logical object structure 800 may also include a
15 "private body" 806 containing or referencing a set of methods 1000 (i.e., programs or procedures) that control use and distribution of the object 300. The ability to optionally incorporate different methods 1000 with each object is important to making VDE 100 highly configurable. Methods 1000 perform
20 the basic function of defining what users (including, where appropriate, distributors, client administrators, etc.), can and cannot do with an object 300. Thus, one object 300 may come

with relatively simple methods, such as allowing unlimited viewing within a fixed period of time for a fixed fee (such as the newsstand price of a newspaper for viewing the newspaper for a period of one week after the paper's publication), while other
5 objects may be controlled by much more complicated (e.g., billing and usage limitation) methods.

Logical object structure 800 shown in Figure 17 may also include one or more PERCs 808. PERCs 808 govern the use of an
10 object 300, specifying methods or combinations of methods that must be used to access or otherwise use the object or its contents. The permission records 808 for an object may include key block(s) 810, which may store decryption keys for accessing the content of the encrypted content stored within the object 300.

15

The content portion of the object is typically divided into portions called data blocks 812. Data blocks 812 may contain any sort of electronic information, such as, "content," including computer programs, images, sound, VDE administrative
20 information, etc. The size and number of data blocks 812 may be selected by the creator of the property. Data blocks 812 need not all be the same size (size may be influenced by content usage,

database format, operating system, security and/or other considerations). Security will be enhanced by using at least one key block 810 for each data block 812 in the object, although this is not required. Key blocks 810 may also span portions of a plurality of data blocks 812 in a consistent or pseudo-random manner. The spanning may provide additional security by applying one or more keys to fragmented or seemingly random pieces of content contained in an object 300, database, or other information entity.

Many objects 300 that are distributed by physical media and/or by "out of channel" means (e.g., redistributed after receipt by a customer to another customer) might not include key blocks 810 in the same object 300 that is used to transport the content protected by the key blocks. This is because VDE objects may contain data that can be electronically copied outside the confines of a VDE node. If the content is encrypted, the copies will also be encrypted and the copier cannot gain access to the content unless she has the appropriate decryption key(s). For objects in which maintaining security is particularly important, the permission records 808 and key blocks 810 will frequently be distributed electronically, using secure communications techniques

(discussed below) that are controlled by the VDE nodes of the sender and receiver. As a result, permission records 808 and key blocks 810 will frequently, in the preferred embodiment, be stored only on electronic appliances 600 of registered users (and may themselves be delivered to the user as part of a registration/initialization process). In this instance, permission records 808 and key blocks 810 for each property can be encrypted with a private DES key that is stored only in the secure memory of an SPU 500, making the key blocks unusable on any other user's VDE node. Alternately, the key blocks 810 can be encrypted with the end user's public key, making those key blocks usable only to the SPU 500 that stores the corresponding private key (or other, acceptably secure, encryption/security techniques can be employed).

In the preferred embodiment, the one or more keys used to encrypt each permission record 808 or other management information record will be changed every time the record is updated (or after a certain one or more events). In this event, the updated record is re-encrypted with new one or more keys. Alternately, one or more of the keys used to encrypt and decrypt management information may be "time aged" keys that

automatically become invalid after a period of time.

Combinations of time aged and other event triggered keys may also be desirable; for example keys may change after a certain number of accesses, and/or after a certain duration of time or absolute point in time. The techniques may also be used together for any given key or combination of keys. The preferred embodiment procedure for constructing time aged keys is a one-way convolution algorithm with input parameters including user and site information as well as a specified portion of the real time value provided by the SPU RTC 528. Other techniques for time aging may also be used, including for example techniques that use only user or site information, absolute points in time, and/or duration of time related to a subset of activities related to using or decrypting VDE secured content or the use of the VDE system.

VDE 100 supports many different types of "objects" 300 having the logical object structure 800 shown in Figure 17. Objects may be classified in one sense based on whether the protection information is bound together with the protected information. For example, a container that is bound by its control(s) to a specific VDE node is called a "stationary object"

(see Figure 18). A container that is not bound by its control information to a specific VDE node but rather carries sufficient control and permissions to permit its use, in whole or in part, at any of several sites is called a "Traveling Object" (see Figure 19).

5

Objects may be classified in another sense based on the nature of the information they contain. A container with information content is called a "Content Object" (see Figure 20).

A container that contains transaction information, audit trails, VDE structures, and/or other VDE control/administrative information is called an "Administrative Object" (see Figure 21).

Some containers that contain executable code operating under VDE control (as opposed to being VDE control information) are called "Smart Objects." Smart Objects support user agents and provide control for their execution at remote sites. There are other categories of objects based upon the location, type and access mechanism associated with their content, that can include combinations of the types mentioned above. Some of these objects supported by VDE 100 are described below. Some or all of the data blocks 812 shown in Figure 17 may include "embedded" content, administrative, stationary, traveling and/or other objects.

1. Stationary Objects

Figure 18 shows an example of a "Stationary Object" structure 850 provided by the preferred embodiment.

5 "Stationary Object" structure 850 is intended to be used only at specific VDE electronic appliance/installations that have received explicit permissions to use one or more portions of the stationary object. Therefore, stationary object structure 850 does not contain a permissions record (PERC) 808; rather, this permissions record is supplied and/or delivered separately (e.g.,
10 at a different time, over a different path, and/or by a different party) to the appliance/installation 600. A common PERC 808 may be used with many different stationary objects.

As shown in Figure 18, public header 802 is preferably
15 "plaintext" (i.e., unencrypted). Private header 804 is preferably encrypted using at least one of many "private header keys." Private header 804 preferably also includes a copy of identification elements from public header 802, so that if the identification information in the plaintext public header is
20 tampered with, the system can determine precisely what the tamperer attempted to alter. Methods 1000 may be contained in a section called the "private body" 806 in the form of object local

methods, load modules, and/or user data elements. This private
body (method) section 806 is preferably encrypted using one or
more private body keys contained in the separate permissions
record 808. The data blocks 812 contain content (information or
5 administrative) that may be encrypted using one or more content
keys also provided in permissions record 808.

2. Traveling Objects

Figure 19 shows an example of a "traveling object"
10 structure 860 provided by the preferred embodiment. Traveling
objects are objects that carry with them sufficient information to
enable at least some use of at least a portion of their content
when they arrive at a VDE node.

15 Traveling object structure 860 may be the same as
stationary object structure 850 shown in Figure 18 except that
the traveling object structure includes a permissions record
(PERC) 808 within private header 804. The inclusion of PERC
808 within traveling object structure 860 permits the traveling
20 object to be used at any VDE electronic appliance/participant 600
(in accordance with the methods 1000 and the contained PERC
808).

"Traveling" objects are a class of VDE objects 300 that can specifically support "out of channel" distribution. Therefore, they include key block(s) 810 and are transportable from one electronic appliance 600 to another. Traveling objects may come with a quite limited usage related budget so that a user may use, in whole or part, content (such as a computer program, game, or database) and evaluate whether to acquire a license or further license or purchase object content. Alternatively, traveling object PERCs 808 may contain or reference budget records with, for example:

(a) budget(s) reflecting previously purchased rights or credit for future licensing or purchasing and enabling at least one or more types of object content usage, and/or

(b) budget(s) that employ (and may debit) available credit(s) stored on and managed by the local VDE node in order to enable object content use, and/or

(c) budget(s) reflecting one or more maximum usage criteria before a report to a local VDE node (and, optionally, also a report to a clearinghouse) is

required and which may be followed by a reset
allowing further usage, and/or modification of one or
more of the original one or more budget(s).

5 As with standard VDE objects 300, a user may be required
to contact a clearinghouse service to acquire additional budgets if
the user wishes to continue to use the traveling object after the
exhaustion of an available budget(s) or if the traveling object (or
a copy thereof) is moved to a different electronic appliance and
10 the new appliance does not have a available credit budget(s) that
corresponds to the requirements stipulated by permissions record
808.

 For example, a traveling object PERC 808 may include a
15 reference to a required budget VDE 1200 or budget options that
may be found and/or are expected to be available. For example,
the budget VDE may reference a consumer's VISA, MC, AMEX,
or other "generic" budget that may be object independent and
may be applied towards the use of a certain or classes of traveling
20 object content (for example any movie object from a class of
traveling objects that might be Blockbuster Video rentals). The
budget VDE itself may stipulate one or more classes of objects it

may be used with, while an object may specifically reference a certain one or more generic budgets. Under such circumstances, VDE providers will typically make information available in such a manner as to allow correct referencing and to enable billing
5 handling and resulting payments.

Traveling objects can be used at a receiving VDE node electronic appliance 600 so long as either the appliance carries the correct budget or budget type (e.g. sufficient credit available
10 from a clearinghouse such as a VISA budget) either in general or for specific one or more users or user classes, or so long as the traveling object itself carries with it sufficient budget allowance or an appropriate authorization (e.g., a stipulation that the traveling object may be used on certain one or more installations
15 or installation classes or users or user classes where classes correspond to a specific subset of installations or users who are represented by a predefined class identifiers stored in a secure database 610). After receiving a traveling object, if the user (and/or installation) doesn't have the appropriate budget(s)
20 and/or authorizations, then the user could be informed by the electronic appliance 600 (using information stored in the traveling object) as to which one or more parties the user could

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☐ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☐ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER:** _____

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.